

Mobile Device Security:

Bring Your Own Device (BYOD)

Includes Executive Summary (A); Approach, Architecture, and Security Characteristics (B); Example Scenario: Putting Guidance into Practice (Supplement); and How-To Guides (C)

Kaitlin Boeckl
Nakia Grayson
Gema Howell
Naomi Lefkowitz
Jason G. Ajmo
Milissa McGinnis*
Kenneth F. Sandlin
Oksana Slivina
Julie Snyder
Paul Ward

**Former employee; all work for this publication done while at employer.*

DRAFT

This publication is available free of charge from
<https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/projects/building-blocks/mobile-device-security/bring-your-own-device>

NIST SPECIAL PUBLICATION 1800-22

Mobile Device Security: Bring Your Own Device (BYOD)

*Includes Executive Summary (A); Approach, Architecture, and Security Characteristics (B);
Example Scenario: Putting Guidance into Practice (Supplement); and How-To Guides (C)*

Kaitlin Boeckl
Nakia Grayson
Gema Howell
Naomi Lefkowitz

*Applied Cybersecurity Division
Information Technology Laboratory*

Jason G. Ajmo
Milissa McGinnis*
Kenneth F. Sandlin
Oksana Slivina
Julie Snyder
Paul Ward

*The MITRE Corporation
McLean, VA*

**Former employee; all work for this publication done while at employer.*

DRAFT

March 2021



U.S. Department of Commerce
Gina M. Raimondo, Secretary

National Institute of Standards and Technology
James K. Olthoff, Acting NIST Director and Acting Under Secretary of Commerce for Standards and Technology

NIST SPECIAL PUBLICATION 1800-22A

Mobile Device Security:

Bring Your Own Device (BYOD)

Volume A:
Executive Summary

Kaitlin Boeckl
Nakia Grayson
Gema Howell
Naomi Lefkovitz

Applied Cybersecurity Division
Information Technology Laboratory

Jason G. Ajmo
Milissa McGinnis*
Kenneth F. Sandlin
Oksana Slivina
Julie Snyder
Paul Ward

The MITRE Corporation
McLean, VA

**Former employee; all work for this publication done while at employer.*

March 2021

DRAFT

This publication is available free of charge from
<https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/projects/building-blocks/mobile-device-security/bring-your-own-device>



1 Executive Summary

2 Many organizations now provide employees the flexibility to use their personal mobile devices to
3 perform work-related activities. An ineffectively secured personal mobile device could expose an
4 organization or employee to data loss or a privacy compromise. Ensuring that an organization's data is
5 protected when it is accessed from personal devices poses unique challenges and threats.

6 Allowing employees to use their personal mobile devices for work-related activities is commonly known
7 as a bring your own device (BYOD) deployment. A BYOD deployment offers a convenient way to
8 remotely access organizational resources, while avoiding the alternative of carrying both a work phone
9 and personal phone. This NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guide demonstrates how organizations can use
10 standards-based, commercially available products to help meet their BYOD security and privacy needs.

11 CHALLENGE

12 BYOD devices can be used interchangeably for
13 work and personal purposes throughout the day.
14 While flexible and convenient, BYOD can introduce
15 challenges to an enterprise. These challenges can
16 include additional responsibilities and complexity
17 for information technology (IT) departments

18 caused by supporting many types of personal mobile devices used by the employees, enterprise security
19 threats arising from unprotected personal devices, as well as challenges protecting the privacy of
20 employees and their personal data stored on their mobile devices.

An ineffectively secured personal mobile device could expose an organization or employee to data loss or a privacy compromise

21 SOLUTION

22 The National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence (NCCoE) collaborated with the mobile device
23 community and cybersecurity technology providers to build a simulated BYOD environment. Using
24 commercially available products, the example solution's technologies and methodologies can enhance
25 the security posture of the adopting organization and help protect employee privacy and organizational
26 information assets.

This practice guide can help your organization:

- **protect data** from being accessed by unauthorized persons when a device is stolen or misplaced
- **reduce risk to employees** through enhanced privacy protections
- **improve the security of mobile devices and applications** by deploying mobile device technologies
- **reduce risks to organizational data** by separating personal and work-related information from each other
- **enhance visibility** into mobile device health to facilitate identification of device and data compromise, and permit efficient user notification
- **leverage industry best practices** to enhance mobile device security and privacy

27 The example solution uses technologies and security capabilities (shown below) from our project
 28 collaborators. The technologies used in the solution support security and privacy standards and
 29 guidelines including the NIST Cybersecurity Framework and NIST Privacy Framework, among others.
 30 Both iOS and Android devices are supported by this guide’s example solution.

Collaborator	Security Capability or Component
	Mobile Device Management that provisions configuration profiles to mobile devices, enforces security policies, and monitors policy compliance
	Application Vetting to determine if an application demonstrates behaviors that could pose a security or privacy risk
	Firewall and Virtual Private Network that controls network traffic and provides encrypted communication channels between mobile devices and other hosts
	Trusted Execution Environment that helps protect mobile devices from computer code with integrity issues
	Mobile Threat Defense detects unwanted activity and informs the device owner and BYOD administrators to prevent or limit harm that an attacker could cause

31 While the NCCoE used a suite of commercial products to address this challenge, this guide does not
 32 endorse these particular products, nor does it guarantee compliance with any regulatory initiatives. Your
 33 organization's information security experts should identify the products that will best integrate with
 34 your existing tools and IT system infrastructure. Your organization can adopt this solution or one that
 35 adheres to these guidelines in whole, or you can use this guide as a starting point for tailoring and
 36 implementing parts of a solution.

37 HOW TO USE THIS GUIDE

38 Depending on your role in your organization, you might use this guide in different ways:

39 **Business decision makers, including chief information security and technology officers** can use this
 40 part of the guide, *NIST SP 1800-22a: Executive Summary*, to understand the impetus for the guide, the
 41 cybersecurity challenge we address, our approach to solving this challenge, and how the solution could
 42 benefit your organization.

43 **Technology, security, and privacy program managers** who are concerned with how to identify,
 44 understand, assess, and mitigate risk can use the following:

- 45 • *NIST SP 1800-22b: Approach, Architecture, and Security Characteristics*, which describes what
 46 we built and why, the risk analysis performed, and the security/privacy control mappings.

- 47 • *NIST SP 1800-22 Supplement: Example Scenario: Putting Guidance into Practice*, which provides
48 an example of a fictional company using this practice guide and other NIST guidance to
49 implement a BYOD deployment with their security and privacy requirements.

50 **IT professionals** who want to implement an approach like this can make use of *NIST SP 1800-22c: How-*
51 *To Guides*, which provides specific product installation, configuration, and integration instructions for
52 building the example implementation, allowing you to replicate all or parts of this project.

53 **SHARE YOUR FEEDBACK**

54 You can view or download the guide at [https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/projects/building-blocks/mobile-](https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/projects/building-blocks/mobile-device-security/bring-your-own-device)
55 [device-security/bring-your-own-device](https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/projects/building-blocks/mobile-device-security/bring-your-own-device). Help the NCCoE make this guide better by sharing your thoughts
56 with us. If you adopt this solution for your own organization, please share your experience and advice
57 with us. We recognize that technical solutions alone will not fully enable the benefits of our solution, so
58 we encourage organizations to share lessons learned and best practices for transforming the processes
59 associated with implementing this guide.

60 To provide comments or to learn more by arranging a demonstration of this example implementation,
61 contact the NCCoE at mobile-nccoe@nist.gov.

62

63 **COLLABORATORS**

64 Collaborators participating in this project submitted their capabilities in response to an open call in the
65 Federal Register for all sources of relevant security capabilities from academia and industry (vendors
66 and integrators). Those respondents with relevant capabilities or product components signed a
67 Cooperative Research and Development Agreement (CRADA) to collaborate with NIST in a consortium to
68 build this example solution.

69 Certain commercial entities, equipment, products, or materials may be identified by name or company
70 logo or other insignia in order to acknowledge their participation in this collaboration or to describe an
71 experimental procedure or concept adequately. Such identification is not intended to imply special
72 status or relationship with NIST or recommendation or endorsement by NIST or NCCoE; neither is it
73 intended to imply that the entities, equipment, products, or materials are necessarily the best available
74 for the purpose.

Mobile Device Security: Bring Your Own Device (BYOD)

Volume B:
Approach, Architecture, and Security Characteristics

Kaitlin Boeckl
Nakia Grayson
Gema Howell
Naomi Lefkovitz

Applied Cybersecurity Division
Information Technology Laboratory

Jason G. Ajmo
Milissa McGinnis*
Kenneth F. Sandlin
Oksana Slivina
Julie Snyder
Paul Ward

The MITRE Corporation
McLean, VA

**Former employee; all work for this publication done while at employer.*

March 2021

DRAFT

This publication is available free of charge from
<https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/projects/building-blocks/mobile-device-security/bring-your-own-device>

1 **DISCLAIMER**

2 Certain commercial entities, equipment, products, or materials may be identified by name or company
3 logo or other insignia in this document in order to acknowledge their participation in this collaboration
4 or to describe an experimental procedure or concept adequately. Such identification is not intended to
5 imply recommendation or endorsement by NIST or NCCoE, neither is it intended to imply that the
6 entities, equipment, products, or materials are necessarily the best available for the purpose.

7 National Institute of Standards and Technology Special Publication 1800-22B Natl. Inst. Stand. Technol.
8 Spec. Publ. 1800-22B, 121 pages, (March 2021), CODEN: NSPUE2

9 **FEEDBACK**

10 You can improve this guide by contributing feedback. As you review and adopt this solution for your
11 own organization, we ask you and your colleagues to share your experience and advice with us.

12 Comments on this publication may be submitted to: mobile-nccoe@nist.gov.

13 Public comment period: March 18, 2021 through May 03, 2021

14 All comments are subject to release under the Freedom of Information Act (FOIA).

15 National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence
16 National Institute of Standards and Technology
17 100 Bureau Drive
18 Mailstop 2002
19 Gaithersburg, MD 20899
20 Email: nccoe@nist.gov

21 **NATIONAL CYBERSECURITY CENTER OF EXCELLENCE**

22 The National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence (NCCoE), a part of the National Institute of Standards
23 and Technology (NIST), is a collaborative hub where industry organizations, government agencies, and
24 academic institutions work together to address businesses' most pressing cybersecurity issues. This
25 public-private partnership enables the creation of practical cybersecurity solutions for specific
26 industries, as well as for broad, cross-sector technology challenges. Through consortia under
27 Cooperative Research and Development Agreements (CRADAs), including technology partners—from
28 Fortune 50 market leaders to smaller companies specializing in information technology security—the
29 NCCoE applies standards and best practices to develop modular, easily adaptable example cybersecurity
30 solutions using commercially available technology. The NCCoE documents these example solutions in
31 the NIST Special Publication 1800 series, which maps capabilities to the NIST Cyber Security Framework
32 and details the steps needed for another entity to recreate the example solution. The NCCoE was
33 established in 2012 by NIST in partnership with the State of Maryland and Montgomery County, Md.

34 To learn more about the NCCoE, visit <https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/>. To learn more about NIST, visit
35 <https://www.nist.gov>.

36 **NIST CYBERSECURITY PRACTICE GUIDES**

37 NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guides (Special Publication Series 1800) target specific cybersecurity
38 challenges in the public and private sectors. They are practical, user-friendly guides that facilitate the
39 adoption of standards-based approaches to cybersecurity. They show members of the information
40 security community how to implement example solutions that help them align with relevant standards
41 and best practices, and provide users with the materials lists, configuration files, and other information
42 they need to implement a similar approach.

43 The documents in this series describe example implementations of cybersecurity practices that
44 businesses and other organizations may voluntarily adopt. These documents do not describe regulations
45 or mandatory practices, nor do they carry statutory authority.

46 **ABSTRACT**

47 Bring Your Own Device (BYOD) refers to the practice of performing work-related activities on personally
48 owned devices. This practice guide provides an example solution demonstrating how to enhance
49 security and privacy in Android and Apple smartphone BYOD deployments.

50 Incorporating BYOD capabilities into an organization can provide greater flexibility in how employees
51 work and increase the opportunities and methods available to access organizational resources. For some
52 organizations, the combination of traditional in-office processes with mobile device technologies
53 enables portable communication approaches and adaptive workflows. For others, it fosters a mobile-
54 first approach in which their employees communicate and collaborate primarily using their mobile
55 devices.

56 However, some of the features that make BYOD mobile devices increasingly flexible and functional also
 57 present unique security and privacy challenges to both work organizations and device owners. The
 58 unique nature of these challenges is driven by the diverse range of devices available that vary in type,
 59 age, operating system (OS), and the level of risk posed.

60 Enabling BYOD capabilities in the enterprise introduces new cybersecurity risks to organizations.
 61 Solutions that are designed to secure corporate devices and on-premises data do not provide an
 62 effective cybersecurity solution for BYOD. Finding an effective solution can be challenging due to the
 63 unique risks that BYOD deployments impose. Additionally, enabling BYOD capabilities introduces new
 64 privacy risks to employees by providing their employer a degree of access to their personal devices,
 65 opening up the possibility of observation and control that would not otherwise exist.

66 To help organizations benefit from BYOD's flexibility while protecting themselves from many of its
 67 critical security and privacy challenges, this Practice Guide provides an example solution using
 68 standards-based, commercially available products and step-by-step implementation guidance.

69 **KEYWORDS**

70 *Bring your own device; BYOD; mobile device management; mobile device security.*

71 **ACKNOWLEDGMENTS**

72 We are grateful to the following individuals for their generous contributions of expertise and time.

Name	Organization
Donna Dodson*	NIST
Joshua M. Franklin*	NIST
Jeff Greene	NIST
Natalia Martin	NIST
William Newhouse	NIST
Murugiah Souppaya	NIST
Kevin Stine	NIST
Chris Brown	The MITRE Corporation

Name	Organization
Nancy Correll	The MITRE Corporation
Spike E. Dog	The MITRE Corporation
Sallie Edwards	The MITRE Corporation
Parisa Grayeli	The MITRE Corporation
Marisa Harriston	The MITRE Corporation
Karri Meldorf	The MITRE Corporation
Erin Wheeler	The MITRE Corporation
Dr. Behnam Shariati	University of Maryland, Baltimore County
Jeffrey Ward	IBM
Cesare Coscia	IBM
Chris Gogoel	Kryptowire
Tom Karygiannis	Kryptowire
Jeff Lamoureaux	Palo Alto Networks
Sean Morgan	Palo Alto Networks
Kabir Kasargod	Qualcomm
Viji Raveendran	Qualcomm
Mikel Draghici	Zimperium

73 *Former employee; all work for this publication done while at employer.

74 The Technology Partners/Collaborators who participated in this build submitted their capabilities in
 75 response to a notice in the Federal Register. Respondents with relevant capabilities or product
 76 components were invited to sign a Cooperative Research and Development Agreement (CRADA) with
 77 NIST, allowing them to participate in a consortium to build this example solution. We worked with:

Technology Partner/Collaborator	Build Involvement
IBM	Mobile Device Management
Kryptowire	Application Vetting
Palo Alto Networks	Firewall; Virtual Private Network
Qualcomm	Trusted Execution Environment
Zimperium	Mobile Threat Defense

78 DOCUMENT CONVENTIONS

79 The terms “shall” and “shall not” indicate requirements to be followed strictly to conform to the
 80 publication and from which no deviation is permitted. The terms “should” and “should not” indicate that
 81 among several possibilities, one is recommended as particularly suitable without mentioning or
 82 excluding others, or that a certain course of action is preferred but not necessarily required, or that (in
 83 the negative form) a certain possibility or course of action is discouraged but not prohibited. The terms
 84 “may” and “need not” indicate a course of action permissible within the limits of the publication. The
 85 terms “can” and “cannot” indicate a possibility and capability, whether material, physical, or causal.

86 CALL FOR PATENT CLAIMS

87 This public review includes a call for information on essential patent claims (claims whose use would be
 88 required for compliance with the guidance or requirements in this Information Technology Laboratory
 89 (ITL) draft publication). Such guidance and/or requirements may be directly stated in this ITL Publication
 90 or by reference to another publication. This call also includes disclosure, where known, of the existence
 91 of pending U.S. or foreign patent applications relating to this ITL draft publication and of any relevant
 92 unexpired U.S. or foreign patents.

93 ITL may require from the patent holder, or a party authorized to make assurances on its behalf, in writ-
 94 ten or electronic form, either:

95 a) assurance in the form of a general disclaimer to the effect that such party does not hold and does not
96 currently intend holding any essential patent claim(s); or

97 b) assurance that a license to such essential patent claim(s) will be made available to applicants desiring
98 to utilize the license for the purpose of complying with the guidance or requirements in this ITL draft
99 publication either:

- 100 1. under reasonable terms and conditions that are demonstrably free of any unfair discrimination;
101 or
102 2. without compensation and under reasonable terms and conditions that are demonstrably free
103 of any unfair discrimination.

104 Such assurance shall indicate that the patent holder (or third party authorized to make assurances on its
105 behalf) will include in any documents transferring ownership of patents subject to the assurance, provi-
106 sions sufficient to ensure that the commitments in the assurance are binding on the transferee, and that
107 the transferee will similarly include appropriate provisions in the event of future transfers with the goal
108 of binding each successor-in-interest.

109 The assurance shall also indicate that it is intended to be binding on successors-in-interest regardless of
110 whether such provisions are included in the relevant transfer documents.

111 Such statements should be addressed to: mobile-nccoe@nist.gov

112 **Contents**

113 **1 Summary..... 1**

114 1.1 Challenge 1

115 1.2 Solution..... 3

116 1.2.1 Standards and Guidance 4

117 1.3 Benefits..... 4

118 **2 How to Use This Guide 5**

119 2.1 Typographic Conventions..... 6

120 **3 Approach 7**

121 3.1 Audience..... 7

122 3.2 Scope 8

123 3.3 Assumptions 8

124 3.4 Risk Assessment 9

125 **4 Architecture 10**

126 4.1 Understanding Common BYOD Architecture Threats and the Example Solution’s

127 Goals to Remediate Those Threats 11

128 4.1.1 Threat Events 11

129 4.1.2 Privacy Problematic Data Actions..... 12

130 4.1.3 Security and Privacy Goals 13

131 4.2 Example Scenario: Putting Guidance into Practice 15

132 4.3 Technologies that Support the Security and Privacy Goals of the Example

133 Solution..... 15

134 4.3.1 Trusted Execution Environment 16

135 4.3.2 Enterprise Mobility Management..... 16

136 4.3.3 Virtual Private Network 17

137 4.3.4 Mobile Application Vetting Service 17

138 4.3.5 Mobile Threat Defense 18

139 4.3.6 Mobile Operating System Capabilities..... 19

140 4.4 Architecture Description 21

141	4.5	Enterprise Integration of the Employees’ Personally Owned Mobile Devices	22
142	4.5.1	Microsoft Active Directory Integration	24
143	4.5.2	Mobile Device Enrollment	25
144	4.6	Mobile Components Integration	26
145	4.6.1	Zimperium–MaaS360	27
146	4.6.2	Kryptowire–MaaS360	28
147	4.6.3	Palo Alto Networks–MaaS360	28
148	4.6.4	iOS and Android MDM Integration	29
149	4.7	Privacy Settings: Mobile Device Data Processing	29
150	4.7.1	EMM: MaaS360	29
151	4.7.2	MTD: Zimperium	31
152	4.7.3	VPN: Palo Alto Networks	34
153	5	Security and Privacy Analysis	34
154	5.1	Analysis Assumptions and Limitations	34
155	5.2	Build Testing	34
156	5.3	Scenarios and Findings	35
157	5.3.1	Cybersecurity Framework and NICE Framework Work Roles Mappings	35
158	5.3.2	Threat Events and Findings	35
159	5.3.3	Privacy Problematic Data Actions and Findings	37
160	5.4	Security and Privacy Control Mappings	38
161	6	Example Scenario: Putting Guidance into Practice	39
162	7	Conclusion	39
163	8	Future Build Considerations	41
164	Appendix A	List of Acronyms	42
165	Appendix B	Glossary	44
166	Appendix C	References	46
167	Appendix D	Standards and Guidance	52
168	Appendix E	Example Solution Lab Build Testing Details	54
169	E.1	Threat Event 1	54

170	E.2	Threat Event 2	54
171	E.3	Threat Event 3	55
172	E.4	Threat Event 4	56
173	E.5	Threat Event 5	56
174	E.6	Threat Event 6	56
175	E.7	Threat Event 7	57
176	E.8	Threat Event 8	57
177	E.9	Threat Event 9	58
178	E.10	Threat Event 10	58
179	E.11	Threat Event 11	59
180	E.12	Threat Event 12	60
181	E.13	Problematic Data Action 1	60
182	E.14	Problematic Data Action 2	60
183	E.15	Problematic Data Action 3	61
184	Appendix F Threat Event Test Information		62
185	F.1	Threat Event 1	62
186	F.2	Threat Event 2	64
187	F.3	Threat Event 3	65
188	F.4	Threat Event 4	68
189	F.5	Threat Event 5	72
190	F.6	Threat Event 6	73
191	F.7	Threat Event 7	74
192	F.8	Threat Event 8	76
193	F.9	Threat Event 9	77
194	F.10	Threat Event 10	80
195	F.11	Threat Event 11	82
196	F.12	Threat Event 12	84
197	F.13	Problematic Data Action 1	85
198	F.14	Problematic Data Action 2	86
199	F.15	Problematic Data Action 3	87

200 **Appendix G Example Security Subcategory and Control Map 89**
201 **Appendix H Example Privacy Subcategory and Control Map 109**

202 **List of Figures**

203 **Figure 3-1 Cybersecurity and Privacy Risk Relationship.....10**
204 **Figure 4-1 Security and Privacy Goals.....14**
205 **Figure 4-2 iOS App Transport Security.....20**
206 **Figure 4-3 Example Solution Architecture21**
207 **Figure 4-4 iOS Application Management and Benefits23**
208 **Figure 4-5 Android Application Management and Benefits.....24**
209 **Figure 4-6 Example Solution VPN Authentication Architecture26**
210 **Figure 4-7 Data Collected by Example Solution Mobile Device Management.....30**
211 **Figure 4-8 Example Solution Mobile Device Management Privacy Settings31**
212 **Figure 7-1 Example Solution Architecture40**
213 **Figure F-1 Policy Violation Notification62**
214 **Figure F-2 Policy Violation Email.....63**
215 **Figure F-3 Policy Violation Alert Details Email63**
216 **Figure F-4 Enterprise Mobility Management Removal Alert.....64**
217 **Figure F-5 PAN-DB Blocked Website65**
218 **Figure F-6 Zimperium Threat Detected.....66**
219 **Figure F-7 Zimperium Sideloaded Application Alert.....67**
220 **Figure F-8 Zimperium Threat Log with Sideloaded Application Alert67**
221 **Figure F-9 Email Regarding MaaS360 Policy Violation Alert68**
222 **Figure F-10 MaaS360 Policy Violation Alert.....69**
223 **Figure F-11 Zimperium Risk Detected.....70**
224 **Figure F-12 Zimperium OS Risk71**
225 **Figure F-13 MaaS360 Compliance Rule Violation.....71**
226 **Figure F-14 MaaS360 Policy Violation Email72**
227 **Figure F-15 Kryptowire iOS Application Report73**

228 Figure F-16 Kryptowire Android Application Report74

229 Figure F-17 MaaS360 Applying Mandatory PIN Policy.....75

230 Figure F-18 Zimperium Reporting Devices with a Disabled Lock Screen76

231 Figure F-19 Application Report with Hardcoded Credentials77

232 Figure F-20 Attempting to Access the Virtual Private Network (VPN) on an Unmanaged Device78

233 Figure F-21 Android: Attempting to Access the VPN on an Unmanaged Device79

234 Figure F-22 Android: Attempting to Access the VPN on a Managed Device.....80

235 Figure F-23 Selectively Wiping an iOS Device81

236 Figure F-24 Selective-Wipe Completed.....81

237 Figure F-25 No Corporate Data Left on Device82

238 Figure F-26 MaaS360 DLP Configuration83

239 Figure F-27 Attempting to Paste Text on iOS84

240 Figure F-28 GlobalProtect Requires the User’s Password85

241 Figure F-29 Initiating a Selective Wipe86

242 Figure F-30 Application Inventory Information.....86

243 Figure F-31 Location Information Restricted.....87

244 Figure F-32 Non-Administrator Failed Portal Login88

245 **List of Tables**

246 Table 4-1 Examples of BYOD Deployment Threats.....12

247 Table 4-2 Examples of BYOD Potential Privacy Events and Problematic Data Actions12

248 Table 4-3 Commercially Available Products Used27

249 Table 4-4 Data Collected by Zimperium.....32

250 Table 5-1 Threat Events and Findings Summary36

251 Table 5-2 Summary of Privacy Problematic Data Actions and Findings37

252 Table G-1 Example Solution’s Cybersecurity Standards and Best Practices Mapping.....89

253 Table H-1 Example Solution’s Privacy Standards and Best Practices Mapping.....109

254 1 Summary

255 This section familiarizes the reader with

- 256 ▪ Bring Your Own Device (BYOD) concepts
- 257 ▪ Challenges, solutions, and benefits related to BYOD deployments

258 BYOD refers to the practice of performing work-related activities on personally owned devices. This
259 practice guide provides an example solution demonstrating how to enhance security and privacy in
260 Android and Apple mobile phone BYOD deployments.

261 Incorporating BYOD capabilities in an organization can provide greater flexibility in how employees work
262 and can increase the opportunities and methods available to access organizational resources. For some
263 organizations, the combination of in-office processes with mobile device technologies enables portable
264 communication approaches and adaptive workflows. Other organizations may adopt a mobile-first
265 approach in which their employees communicate and collaborate primarily using their mobile devices.

266 Extending mobile device use by enabling BYOD capabilities in the enterprise can introduce new
267 information technology (IT) risks to organizations. Solutions that are designed to help secure corporate
268 devices and the data located on those corporate devices do not always provide an effective
269 cybersecurity solution for BYOD.

270 Deploying effective solutions can be challenging due to the unique risks that BYOD deployments impose.
271 Some of the features that make personal mobile devices increasingly flexible and functional also present
272 unique security and privacy challenges to both employers and device owners.

273 Additionally, enabling BYOD capabilities can introduce new privacy risks to employees by providing their
274 employer a degree of access to their personal devices, opening the possibility of mobile device
275 observation and control that would not otherwise exist.

276 This practice guide helps organizations deploy BYOD capabilities by providing an example solution that
277 helps address BYOD challenges, solutions, and benefits. In this practice guide, the term mobile phone is
278 used to describe an Apple iOS or Android mobile telephone device. Additionally, this practice guide's
279 scope for BYOD does not include the deployment of laptops or devices similar to laptops.

280 1.1 Challenge

281 Many organizations now authorize employees to use their personal mobile devices to perform work-
282 related activities. This provides employees with increased flexibility to access organizational information
283 resources. However, BYOD architectures can also introduce vulnerabilities in the enterprise's IT
284 infrastructure because personally owned mobile devices are typically unmanaged and may lack mobile
285 device security protections. Unmanaged devices are at greater risk of unauthorized access to sensitive
286 information, email phishing, eavesdropping, misuse of device sensors, or compromise of organizational
287 data due to lost devices to name but a few risks.

288 BYOD deployment challenges can include:

289 **Supporting a broad ecosystem of mobile devices**

- 290 ▪ with diverse technologies that rapidly evolve and vary in manufacturer, operating system (OS),
291 and age of the device
- 292 ▪ where each device has unique security and privacy requirements and capabilities
- 293 ▪ whose variety can present interoperability issues that might affect organizational integration

294 **Reducing organizational risk and threats to the enterprise’s sensitive information**

- 295 ▪ posed by applications like games that may not usually be installed on devices issued by an
296 organization
- 297 ▪ that result from lost, stolen, or sold mobile devices that still contain or have access to
298 organizational data
- 299 ▪ created by a user who shares their personally owned device with friends and family members
300 when that personally owned device may also be used for work activities
- 301 ▪ due to personally owned mobile devices being taken to places that increase the risk of loss of
302 control for the device
- 303 ▪ that result from malicious applications compromising the device and subsequently the data to
304 which the device has access
- 305 ▪ produced by network-based attacks that can traverse a device’s always-on connection to the
306 internet
- 307 ▪ caused by phishing attempts that try to collect user credentials or entice a user to install
308 malicious software

309 **Protecting the privacy of employees**

- 310 ▪ by helping to keep their personal photos, documents, and other data private and inaccessible to
311 others (including the organization)
- 312 ▪ by helping to ensure separation between their work and personal data while simultaneously
313 meeting the organization’s objectives for business functions, usability, security, and employee
314 privacy
- 315 ▪ by providing them with concise and understandable information about what data is collected
316 and what actions are allowed and disallowed on their devices

317 **Clearly communicating BYOD concepts**

- 318 ▪ among an organization’s information technology team so it can develop the architecture to
319 address BYOD’s unique security and privacy concerns while using a repeatable, standardized,
320 and clearly communicated risk framework language
- 321 ▪ to organizational leadership and employees to obtain support in deploying BYOD

- 322 ▪ related to mobile device security technologies so that the organization can consistently plan for
323 and implement the protection capabilities of their security tools

324 Given these challenges, it can be complex to manage the security and privacy aspects of personally
325 owned mobile devices that access organizational information assets. This document provides an
326 example solution to help organizations address these challenges.

327 **1.2 Solution**

328 To help organizations benefit from BYOD's flexibility while protecting themselves from many of its
329 critical security and privacy challenges, this National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST)
330 Cybersecurity Practice Guide provides an example solution using standards-based, commercially
331 available products and step-by-step implementation guidance.

332 In our lab at the National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence (NCCoE), engineers built an environment
333 that contains an example solution for managing the security and privacy of BYOD deployments. In this
334 guide, we show how an enterprise can leverage the concepts presented in this example solution to
335 implement enterprise mobility management (EMM), mobile threat defense (MTD), application vetting, a
336 trusted execution environment (TEE) supporting secure boot/image authentication, and virtual private
337 network (VPN) services to support a BYOD solution.

338 We configured these technologies to protect organizational assets and employee privacy and provide
339 methodologies to enhance the data protection posture of the adopting organization. The standards and
340 best practices on which this example solution is based help ensure the confidentiality, integrity, and
341 availability of enterprise data on BYOD Android and Apple mobile phones as well as the predictability,
342 manageability, and disassociability of employee's data.

343 **The example solution in this practice guide helps**

- 344 ▪ detect and protect against installing mobile malware, phishing attempts, and network-based
345 attacks
- 346 ▪ enforce passcode usage
- 347 ▪ protect organizational data by enabling selective device wipe capability of organizational data
348 and applications
- 349 ▪ protect against organizational data loss by restricting an employee's ability to copy and paste,
350 perform a screen capture, or store organizational data in unapproved locations
- 351 ▪ organizations view BYOD risks and remediate threats (e.g., risks from jailbroken or rooted
352 devices)
- 353 ▪ provide users with access to protected business resources (e.g., SharePoint, knowledge base,
354 internal wikis, application data)
- 355 ▪ support executed code authenticity, runtime state integrity, and persistent memory data
356 confidentiality
- 357 ▪ protect data from eavesdropping while traversing a network

- 358 ▪ vet the security of mobile applications used for work-related activities
 - 359 ▪ organizations implement settings to protect employee privacy
 - 360 ▪ an organization deploy its own BYOD solution by providing a series of how-to guides—step-by-
 - 361 step instructions covering the initial setup (installation or provisioning) and configuration for
 - 362 each component of the architecture—to help security and privacy engineers rapidly deploy and
 - 363 evaluate a mobile device solution in their test environment
- 364 Commercial, standards-based products such as the ones used in this practice guide are readily available
- 365 and interoperable with existing IT infrastructure and investments. Organizations can use this guidance in
- 366 whole or in part to help understand and mitigate common BYOD security and privacy challenges.

367 1.2.1 Standards and Guidance

368 This guide leverages many standards and guidance, including the NIST *Framework for Improving Critical*

369 *Infrastructure Cybersecurity*, Version 1.1 (Cybersecurity Framework) [1], the *NIST Privacy Framework: A*

370 *Tool For Improving Privacy Through Enterprise Risk Management*, Version 1.0 (Privacy Framework) [2],

371 NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-181 *National Initiative for Cybersecurity Education (NICE) Cybersecurity*

372 *Workforce Framework (2017)* [3], the NIST Risk Management Framework [4], and the NIST Mobile

373 Threat Catalogue [5]. For additional information, see [Appendix D](#), Standards and Guidance.

374 1.3 Benefits

375 Carrying two mobile devices, one for work and one for personal use, introduces inconveniences and

376 disadvantages that some organizations and employees are looking to avoid. Recognizing that BYOD is

377 being adopted, the NCCoE worked to provide organizations with guidance for improving the security and

378 privacy of these solutions.

379 **For organizations, the potential benefits of this example solution include**

- 380 ▪ enhanced protection against both malicious applications and loss of data if a device is stolen or
- 381 misplaced
- 382 ▪ reduced adverse effects if a device is compromised
- 383 ▪ visibility for system administrators into mobile security compliance, enabling automated
- 384 identification and notification of a compromised device
- 385 ▪ a vendor-agnostic, modular architecture based on technology roles
- 386 ▪ demonstrated enhanced security options for mobile access to organizational resources such as
- 387 intranet, email, contacts, and calendar

388 **For employees, the potential benefits of this example solution include**

- 389 ▪ safeguards to help protect their privacy
- 390 ▪ better protected personal devices by screening work applications for malicious capability before
- 391 installing them

- 392 ▪ enhanced understanding about how their personal device will integrate with their organization
393 through a standardized BYOD deployment

394 2 How to Use This Guide

395 This section familiarizes the reader with

- 396 ▪ this practice guide’s content
397 ▪ the suggested audience for each volume
398 ▪ typographic conventions used in this volume

399 This NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guide demonstrates a standards-based reference design and provides
400 users with the information they need to replicate this BYOD example solution. This reference design is
401 modular and can be deployed in whole or in part.

402 This guide contains four volumes:

- 403 ▪ NIST SP 1800-22A: *Executive Summary* – high-level overview of the challenge, example solution,
404 and benefits of the practice guide
405 ▪ NIST SP 1800-22B: *Approach, Architecture, and Security Characteristics* – what we built and why
406 **(you are here)**
407 ▪ NIST SP 1800-22 Supplement: *Example Scenario: Putting Guidance into Practice* – how
408 organizations can implement this example solution’s guidance
409 ▪ NIST SP 1800-22C: *How-To Guides* – instructions for building the example solution

410 Depending on your role in your organization, you might use this guide in different ways:

411 **Business decision makers, including chief security, privacy, and technology officers**, will be interested
412 in the *Executive Summary*, *NIST SP 1800-22A*, which describes the following topics:

- 413 ▪ challenges that enterprises face in securing BYOD deployments
414 ▪ example solution built at the NCCoE
415 ▪ benefits of adopting the example solution

416 **Technology, security, or privacy program managers** who are concerned with how to identify,
417 understand, assess, and mitigate risk will be interested in this part of the guide, *NIST SP 1800-22B*, which
418 describes what we did and why. The following sections will be of particular interest:

- 419 ▪ [Appendix G](#), Example Security Subcategory and Control Map, maps the security characteristics
420 of this example solution to cybersecurity standards and best practices.
421 ▪ [Appendix H](#), Example Privacy Subcategory and Control Map, describes how the privacy control
422 map identifies the privacy characteristic standards mapping for the products as they were used
423 in the example solution.

424 You might share the *Executive Summary, NIST SP 1800-22A*, with your leadership team members to help
425 them understand the importance of adopting standards-based BYOD deployments.

426 **IT professionals** who want to implement an approach like this will find the whole practice guide useful.
427 You can use the how-to portion of the guide, *NIST SP 1800-22C*, to replicate all or parts of the build
428 created in our lab. The how-to portion of the guide provides specific product installation, configuration,
429 and integration instructions for implementing the example solution. We do not re-create the product
430 manufacturers' documentation, which is generally widely available. Rather, we show how we
431 incorporated the products together in our environment to create an example solution.

432 This guide assumes that IT professionals have experience implementing security products within the
433 enterprise. While we have used a suite of commercial products to address this challenge, this guide does
434 not endorse these particular products. Your organization can adopt this solution or one that adheres to
435 these guidelines in whole, or you can use this guide as a starting point for tailoring and implementing
436 parts of this guide's example solution for BYOD security management. Your organization's security
437 experts should identify the products that will effectively address the BYOD risks identified for your
438 organization and best integrate with your existing tools and IT system infrastructure. We hope that you
439 will seek products that are congruent with applicable standards and best practices. Section 4.3,
440 *Technologies that Support the Security and Privacy Goals of the Example Solution*, lists the products we
441 used and maps them to the cybersecurity controls provided by this reference solution.

442 **For those who would like to see how the example solution can be implemented**, this practice guide
443 contains an example scenario about a fictional company called Great Seneca Accounting. The example
444 scenario shows how BYOD objectives can align with an organization's priority security and privacy
445 capabilities through NIST risk management standards, guidance, and tools. It is provided in this practice
446 guide's supplement, *Example Scenario: Putting Guidance into Practice*.

- 447 ▪ [Appendix F](#) of the Supplement, describes the risk analysis we performed, using an example
448 scenario.
- 449 ▪ [Appendix G](#) of the Supplement, describes how to conduct a privacy risk assessment and use it to
450 improve mobile device architectures, using an example scenario.

451 A NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guide does not describe "the" solution, but a possible solution. This is a
452 draft guide. We seek feedback on its contents and welcome your input. Comments, suggestions, and
453 success stories will improve subsequent versions of this guide. Please contribute your thoughts to
454 mobile-nccoe@nist.gov.

455 Acronyms used in figures can be found in the Acronyms Appendix.

456 **2.1 Typographic Conventions**

457 The following table presents typographic conventions used in this volume.

Typeface/Symbol	Meaning	Example
<i>Italics</i>	file names and path names; references to documents that are not hyperlinks; new terms; and placeholders	For language use and style guidance, see the <i>NCCoE Style Guide</i> .
Bold	names of menus, options, command buttons, and fields	Choose File > Edit .
Monospace	command-line input, onscreen computer output, sample code examples, and status codes	Mkdir
Monospace Bold	command-line user input contrasted with computer output	service sshd start
blue text	link to other parts of the document, a web URL, or an email address	All publications from NIST's NCCoE are available at https://www.nccoe.nist.gov .

458 3 Approach

459 This section familiarizes the reader with

- 460 ▪ this guide's intended audience, scope, and assumptions
- 461 ▪ mobile device security and privacy risk assessments

462 To identify the cybersecurity challenges associated with deploying a BYOD solution, the team surveyed
 463 reports of mobile device security trends and invited the mobile device security community to engage in
 464 a discussion about pressing cybersecurity challenges.

465 Two broad and significant themes emerged from this research:

- 466 ▪ Administrators wanted to better understand what policies and standards should be
 467 implemented.
- 468 ▪ Employees were concerned about the degree to which enterprises have control over their
 469 personally owned mobile devices and might have visibility into the personal activity that takes
 470 place on them.

471 The team addressed these two challenges by reviewing the primary standards, best practices, and
 472 guidelines contained within [Appendix D](#), Standards and Guidance.

473 3.1 Audience

474 This practice guide is intended for organizations that want to adopt a BYOD architecture that enables
 475 use of personal mobile phones and tablets. The target audience is executives, security managers, privacy
 476 managers, engineers, administrators, and others who are responsible for acquiring, implementing,

477 communicating with users about, or maintaining mobile enterprise technology. This technology can
478 include centralized device management, secure device/application security contexts, application vetting,
479 and endpoint protection systems.

480 This document will interest system architects already managing mobile device deployments and those
481 looking to integrate a BYOD architecture into existing organizational wireless systems. It assumes that
482 readers have a basic understanding of mobile device technologies and enterprise security and privacy
483 principles. Please refer to Section 2 for how different audiences can effectively use this guide.

484 3.2 Scope

485 The scope of this build includes managing Apple or Android mobile phones and tablets deployed in a
486 BYOD configuration with cloud-based EMM. We excluded laptops and mobile devices with minimal
487 computing capability, including feature phones, and wearables. We also do not address classified
488 systems, devices, data, and applications within this publication.

489 While this document is primarily about mobile device security for BYOD implementations, BYOD
490 introduces privacy risk to the organization and its employees who participate in the BYOD program.
491 Therefore, the NCCoE found addressing privacy risk to be a necessary part of developing the BYOD
492 architecture. The scope of privacy in this build is limited to those employees who use their devices as
493 part of their organization's BYOD solution. The build does not explicitly address privacy considerations of
494 other individuals whose information is processed by the organization through an employee's personal
495 device.

496 We intend for the example solution proposed in this practice guide to be broadly applicable to
497 enterprises, including both the public and private sectors.

498 3.3 Assumptions

499 This project is guided by the following assumptions:

- 500 ▪ The example solution was developed in a lab environment. While the environment is based on a
501 typical organization's IT enterprise, the example solution does not reflect the complexity of a
502 production environment.
- 503 ▪ The organization has access to the skills and resources required to implement a mobile device
504 security and privacy solution.
- 505 ▪ The example security and privacy control mappings provided as part of this practice guide are
506 focused on mobile device needs, and do not include general control mappings that would also
507 typically be used in an enterprise. Those general control mappings that do not specifically apply
508 to this guide's mobile device security example solution are outside the scope of this guide's
509 example solution.
- 510 ▪ Because the organizational environment in which this build could be implemented represents a
511 greater level of complexity than is captured in the current guide, we assume that organizations

512 will first examine the implications for their current environment before implementing any part
513 of the proposed example solution.

- 514 ▪ The organization has either already invested or is willing to invest in the security of mobile
515 devices used within it and in the privacy of participating employees, and in the organization’s IT
516 systems more broadly. As such, we assume that the organization either has the technology in
517 place to support this implementation or has access to the off-the shelf technology used in this
518 build, which we assume will perform as described by the respective product vendor.
- 519 ▪ The organization has familiarized itself with existing standards and any associated guidelines
520 (e.g., NIST Cybersecurity Framework [1]; *NIST Privacy Framework* [2]; NIST SP 800-124 Revision 2
521 (Draft), *Guidelines for Managing the Security of Mobile Devices in the Enterprise* [6]; NIST SP
522 1800-4 *Mobile Device Security: Cloud and Hybrid Builds* [7]) relevant to implementation of the
523 example solution proposed in this practice guide. We also assume that any existing technology
524 used in the example solution has been implemented in a manner consistent with these
525 standards.
- 526 ▪ The organization has instituted relevant mobile device security and privacy policies, and these
527 will be updated based on implementation of this example solution.
- 528 ▪ The organization will provide guidance and training to its employees regarding BYOD usage and
529 how to report device loss or suspected security issues in which their devices are involved. This
530 guidance will be periodically reviewed and updated, and employees will be regularly trained on
531 BYOD usage.

532 3.4 Risk Assessment

533 [NIST SP 800-30 Revision 1, *Guide for Conducting Risk Assessments*](#), states that risk is “a measure of the
534 extent to which an entity is threatened by a potential circumstance or event, and typically a function of:
535 (i) the adverse impacts that would arise if the circumstance or event occurs; and (ii) the likelihood of
536 occurrence.” The guide further defines risk assessment as “the process of identifying, estimating, and
537 prioritizing risks to organizational operations (including mission, functions, image, reputation),
538 organizational assets, individuals, other organizations, and the Nation, resulting from the operation of
539 an information system. Part of risk management incorporates threat and vulnerability analyses, and
540 considers mitigations provided by security controls planned or in place.”

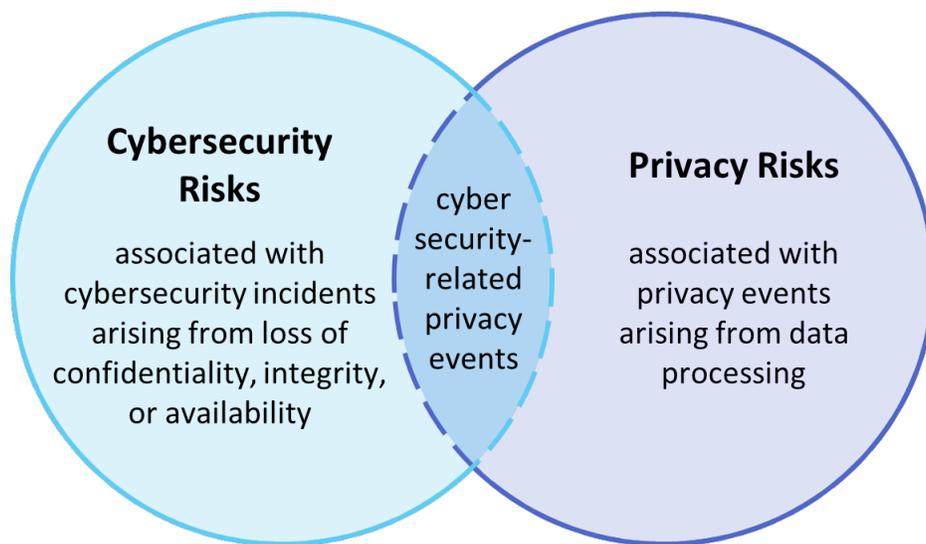
541 The NCCoE recommends that any discussion of risk management, particularly at the enterprise level,
542 begins with a comprehensive review of [NIST SP 800-37 Revision 2, *Risk Management Framework for
543 Information Systems and Organizations*](#)—material that is available to the public. The [Risk Management
544 Framework \(RMF\)](#) guidance, as a whole, proved to be invaluable in giving us a baseline to assess risks,
545 from which we developed the project, the security characteristics of the build, and this guide.

546 We identified the security and privacy risks for this BYOD example solution by examining the
547 relationship of risk between cybersecurity and privacy. Cybersecurity and privacy are two distinct risk
548 areas, though the two intersect in significant ways. As noted in Section 1.2.1 of the *NIST Privacy
549 Framework* [2], having a general understanding of the different origins of cybersecurity and privacy risks
550 is important for determining the most effective solutions to address the risks. [Figure 3-1](#) illustrates this

551 relationship, showing that some privacy risks arise from cybersecurity risks, and some are unrelated to
 552 cybersecurity risks. Allowing an unauthorized device to connect to the organization's network through
 553 its BYOD implementation is an example of a security risk that may not impact privacy.

554 An example of a security risk that may also be considered a privacy risk is an employer having increased
 555 access to an employee's personal use applications such as personal contacts and personal calendars on
 556 their device. An example of a privacy risk that is not driven by a security risk is a BYOD implementation
 557 being used to track employee location, which may reveal information about the places they visit.

558 **Figure 3-1 Cybersecurity and Privacy Risk Relationship**



559
 560 The security capabilities in this build help address some of the privacy risks that arise for employees.
 561 This build also uses the *NIST Privacy Framework* [2] and Privacy Risk Assessment Methodology (PRAM)
 562 [8] to identify and address privacy risks that are beyond the scope of security risks. Regardless of
 563 whether cybersecurity and privacy are situated in the same part of the organization or in different parts,
 564 the two capabilities must work closely together to address BYOD risks.

565 A risk assessment can include additional analysis areas. For more information on the example solution's:

- 566 ▪ **Security and privacy threats, and goals to remediate those threats**, see Section 4.1
- 567 ▪ **Vulnerabilities** that influenced the reference architecture, see Appendix Section F-5 of the
 568 Supplement
- 569 ▪ **Risks** that influenced the architecture development, see Appendix Section F-6 of the
 570 Supplement
- 571 ▪ **Security Control Mapping** to cybersecurity and privacy standards and best practices, see
 572 [Appendix G](#) and [Appendix H](#)

573 **4 Architecture**

574 This section helps familiarize the reader with

- 575 ▪ threats to BYOD architectures
- 576 ▪ example solution goals to remediate threats to BYOD architectures
- 577 ▪ how organizations might leverage the *Example Scenario: Putting Guidance into Practice*
- 578 supplement of this practice guide to implement their mobile device solution
- 579 ▪ technologies to support the example solution goals
- 580 ▪ the example solution’s architecture
- 581 ▪ how the example solution’s products were integrated
- 582 ▪ mobile device data collection

583 **4.1 Understanding Common BYOD Architecture Threats and the Example**

584 **Solution’s Goals to Remediate Those Threats**

585 This section contains examples of common security and privacy concerns in BYOD architectures. We
586 provide a list of goals to address those challenges. Once completed, the architecture provides
587 organizations with a security and privacy-enhanced design for their mobile devices. The example
588 solution’s challenges and goals are highlighted below, followed by the architecture that supports those
589 goals.

590 **4.1.1 Threat Events**

591 Leveraging a system life cycle approach [9], this build considered threats relating to BYOD deployments.
592 Information from the Open Web Application Security Project Mobile Top 10 [10], which provides a
593 consolidated list of mobile application risks, and information from the NIST Mobile Threat Catalogue [5],
594 which examines the mobile information system threats in the broader mobile ecosystem were used to
595 develop applicable threats. Table 4-1 gives each threat an identifier for the purposes of this build, a
596 description of each threat event (TE), and the related NIST Mobile Threat Catalogue Threat identifiers
597 (IDs).

598 We limited inclusion of threat events to those that we generally expected to have a high likelihood of
599 occurrence and high potential for adverse impact. Organizations applying this build should evaluate the
600 NIST Mobile Threat Catalogue for additional threats that may be relevant to their architecture. For an
601 example of how to determine the risk from these threats, see Appendix F in the Supplement.

602 Table 4-1 Examples of BYOD Deployment Threats

Threat Event ID	Threat Event Description	NIST Mobile Threat Catalogue Threat ID
TE-1	privacy-intrusive applications	APP-2, APP-12
TE-2	account credential theft through phishing	AUT-9
TE-3	malicious applications	APP-2, APP-5, APP-31, APP-40, APP-32, AUT-10
TE-4	outdated phones	APP-4, APP-26, STA-0, STA-9, STA-16
TE-5	camera and microphone remote access	APP-32, APP-36
TE-6	sensitive data transmissions	APP-0, CEL-18, LPN-2
TE-7	brute-force attacks to unlock a phone	AUT-2, AUT-4
TE-8	weak password practices protection	APP-9, AUT-0
TE-9	unmanaged device protection	EMM-5
TE-10	lost or stolen data protection	PHY-0
TE-11	protecting data from being inadvertently backed up to a cloud service	EMM-9
TE-12	personal identification number (PIN) or password-sharing protection	AUT-0, AUT-2, AUT-4, AUT-5

603

4.1.2 Privacy Problematic Data Actions

604 This build also considered operational activities of the example solution that interact with employee
605 data during BYOD processes (“data actions”). Additionally, it identified those that potentially cause
606 privacy-related problems for individuals (“problematic data actions”). Problematic data actions (PDAs)
607 are those actions that may cause an adverse effect for individuals.

608 The NIST PRAM [8] and accompanying Catalog of Problematic Data Actions and Problems [11] were used
609 to conduct this analysis. Table 4-2 provides the results of this analysis. See Appendix G of the
610 Supplement for an example of determining the privacy risks based on these data actions.

611 Table 4-2 Examples of BYOD Potential Privacy Events and Problematic Data Actions

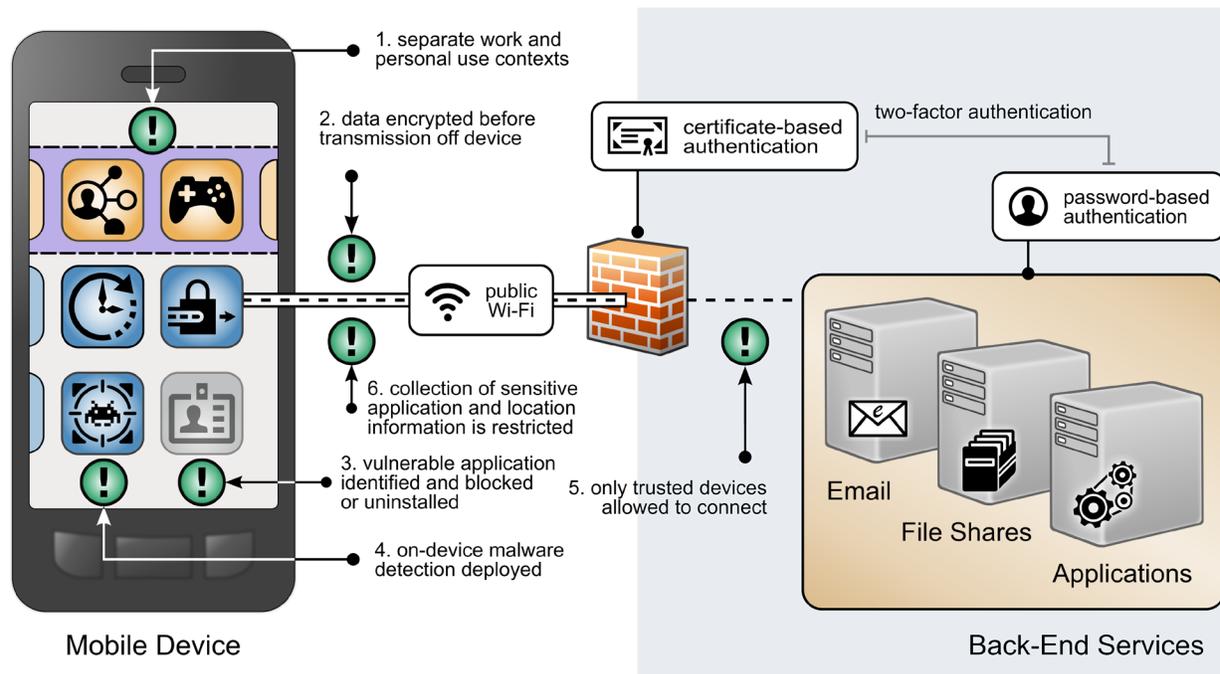
Problematic Data Action ID	Mobile Data Actions	Problematic Data Actions
PDA-1	Devices can be wiped and reset to factory settings based on inputs regarding anomalous activity and untrusted applications.	Unwarranted restriction: Blocking device access or wiping devices entirely may result in loss of personal data, which can cause employee loss of autonomy in their interactions with their device, economic loss to recover personal data, or loss of trust in the organization’s BYOD implementation.

Problematic Data Action ID	Mobile Data Actions	Problematic Data Actions
PDA-2	The BYOD infrastructure comprehensively monitors device interactions related to enterprise connectivity and data processing.	<p>Surveillance:</p> <p>Monitoring BYOD resources on personal devices provides a degree of visibility into personal devices that employers would not otherwise have, which in turn can result in the employer creating an incomplete narrative about employees that could lead to issues such as discrimination or employee loss of trust in the employer if the employee discovers unanticipated monitoring. Additionally, employees who connect their personal mobile device to the organization’s network may not be aware of the degree of visibility into their personal activities and data and may not want this to occur. For example, employers may be able to collect location information or application data that provides insights into employee health. Employees may feel as though they are being surveilled.</p>
PDA-3	Data about individuals and their devices flows between various applications and analytical tools, some of which may be shared with third parties and publicly.	<p>Unanticipated revelation:</p> <p>Transmission of employee device information and personal data to the employer and third parties beyond the employer may occur through monitoring, data sharing across parties for analytics, and other operational purposes. Administrator and co-worker awareness of otherwise private activities on devices may reveal information about employees that results in dignity losses, such as embarrassment or emotional distress.</p> <p>Data transmission about individuals and their devices among a variety of different parties could be confusing for employees who might not know who has access to information about them. This transmission could reveal personal information about the employee to parties they would not expect to have such information. This lack of employee visibility and awareness of data-sharing practices may also cause employee loss of trust in the employer.</p>

612 **4.1.3 Security and Privacy Goals**

613 To address the challenges stated in the previous sections, the architecture for this build addresses the
 614 high-level security and privacy goals illustrated in [Figure 4-1](#).

615 Figure 4-1 Security and Privacy Goals



616 The following goals were highlighted above in [Figure 4-1 Security and Privacy Goals](#), with a green
 617 exclamation mark:

- 618
- 619
- 620
- 621
- 622
- 623
- 624
- 625
- 626
- 627
- 628
- 629
- 630
- 631
- 632
- 633
- 634
- 635
1. **Separate organization and personal information.** BYOD deployments can place organizational data at risk by allowing it to travel outside internal networks and systems when it is accessed on a personal device. BYOD deployments can also place personal data at risk by capturing information from employee devices. To help mitigate this, organizational and personal information can be separated by restricting data flow between organizationally managed and unmanaged applications. The goals include helping to prevent sensitive data from crossing between work and personal contexts.
 2. **Encrypt data in transit.** Devices deployed in BYOD scenarios can leverage nonsecure networks, putting data at risk of interception. To help mitigate this, mobile devices can connect to the organization over a VPN or similar solution to encrypt all data before it is transmitted from the device, protecting otherwise unencrypted data from interception. A user would not be able to access the organization's resources without an active VPN connection and required certificates.
 3. **Identify vulnerable applications.** Employees may install a wide range of applications on their personally owned devices, some of which may have security weaknesses. When vulnerable personal applications are identified, an organization can remove the employee's work profile or configuration file from the device rather than uninstalling the employee's personal applications.

- 636 4. **Detect malware.** On personally owned devices without restriction policies in place, users
637 may obtain applications outside official application stores, increasing the risk of installing
638 malware in disguise. To help protect from this risk, an organization could deploy
639 malware detection to devices to identify malicious applications and facilitate
640 remediation.
- 641 5. **Trusted device access.** Because mobile devices can connect from unknown locations, an
642 organization can provision mobile devices with a security certificate that allows
643 identifying and authenticating them at the connection point, which combines with user
644 credentials to create two-factor authentication from mobile devices. An employee would
645 not be able to access the organization’s resources without the required certificates.
- 646 6. **Restrict information collection.** Mobile device management tools can track application
647 inventory and location information, including physical address, geographic coordinates,
648 location history, internet protocol (IP) address, and Secure Set Identifier (SSID). These
649 capabilities may reveal sensitive information about employees, such as frequently visited
650 locations or habits. Device management tools can be configured to exclude application
651 and location information. Excluding the collection of information further protects
652 employee privacy when device and application data is shared outside the organization
653 for monitoring and analytics.

654 4.2 Example Scenario: Putting Guidance into Practice

655 The example solution’s high-level goals underscore the need to use a thorough risk assessment process
656 for organizations implementing mobile device security capabilities. To learn more about how your
657 organization might implement this example solution, reference the *Example Scenario: Putting Guidance
658 into Practice* supplement of this practice guide. The supplement provides an example approach for
659 developing and deploying a BYOD architecture that directly addresses the mobile device threat events
660 and problematic data actions discussed in this guide.

661 The example scenario supplement shows how a fictional organization used the guidance in NIST’s
662 Cybersecurity Framework [1], Privacy Framework [2], Risk Management Framework [9], and PRAM [8] to
663 identify and address their BYOD security and privacy goals.

664 4.3 Technologies that Support the Security and Privacy Goals of the 665 Example Solution

666 This section describes the mobile-specific technology components used within this example solution.
667 These technologies were selected to address the security goals, threat events, and problematic data
668 actions identified in Section 4.1. This section provides a brief description of each technology and
669 discusses the security and privacy capabilities that each component provides.

670 The technology components in this section are combined into a cohesive enterprise architecture to help
671 address BYOD security threats and problematic data actions and provide security-enhanced access to
672 enterprise resources from mobile devices. The technologies described in this section provide protection
673 for enterprise resources accessed by BYOD users.

674 4.3.1 Trusted Execution Environment

675 A trusted execution environment (TEE) is “a tamper-resistant processing environment that runs on a
676 ‘separation kernel’. It guarantees the authenticity of the executed code, the integrity of the runtime
677 states (e.g., central processing unit (CPU) registers, memory and sensitive I/O), and the confidentiality of
678 its code, data and runtime states stored on a persistent memory. In addition, it shall be able to provide
679 remote attestation that proves its trustworthiness for third-parties” [12]. The TEE helps protect the
680 mobile devices from executed code with integrity issues. This is important in BYOD environments due to
681 an enterprise’s limited control over an employee’s personally owned device. Users can install and run
682 many types of applications on personally owned devices without restriction from the enterprise.

683 4.3.2 Enterprise Mobility Management

684 Organizations use EMM solutions to secure the mobile devices of users who are authorized to access
685 organizational resources. Such solutions generally have two main components. The first is a backend
686 service that mobile administrators use to manage the policies, configurations, and security actions
687 applied to registered mobile devices. The second is an on-device agent, usually in the form of a mobile
688 application, that integrates between the mobile OS and the solution’s backend service. iOS also supports
689 a web-based EMM enrollment use case, which we do not discuss in this document.

690 At a minimum, an EMM solution can perform mobile device management (MDM) functions, which
691 include the ability to provision configuration profiles to devices, enforce security policies on devices, and
692 monitor compliance with those policies. The on-device MDM agent can typically notify the device user
693 of any noncompliant settings and may be able to remediate some noncompliant settings automatically.
694 The organization can use policy compliance data to inform its access control decisions so that it grants
695 access only to a device that demonstrates the mandated level of compliance with the security policies in
696 place.

697 EMM solutions commonly include any of the following capabilities: mobile application management,
698 mobile content management, and implementations of or integrations with device- or mobile-OS-specific
699 containerization solutions, such as Samsung Knox. These capabilities can be used in the following ways:

- 700 ▪ Mobile application management can be used to manage the installation and usage of
701 applications based on their trustworthiness and work relevance.
- 702 ▪ Mobile content management can control how managed applications access and use
703 organizational data.
- 704 ▪ Containerization solutions can strengthen the separation between a user’s personal and
705 professional usage of the device.
- 706 ▪ Also, EMM solutions often have integrations with a diverse set of additional tools and security
707 technologies that enhance their capabilities.

708 For further reading on this topic, NIST SP 800-124 Revision 2 (Draft), *Guidelines for Managing the*
709 *Security of Mobile Devices in the Enterprise* [6] provides additional information on mobile device
710 management with EMM solutions. The National Information Assurance Partnership’s (NIAP’s) *Protection*

711 *Profile for Mobile Device Management Servers and Extended Package for Mobile Device Management*
712 *Agents* [13] describes important capabilities and security requirements to look for in EMM systems.

713 EMMs can help BYOD deployments improve the security posture of the organization by providing a
714 baseline of controls to limit attack vectors and help protect enterprise information that is on a
715 personally owned device. EMMs can also provide an additional layer of separation between enterprise
716 data and personal data on a mobile device.

717 4.3.3 Virtual Private Network

718 A VPN gateway increases the security of remote connections from authorized mobile devices to an
719 organization's internal network. A VPN is a virtual network, built on top of existing physical networks,
720 that can provide a secure communication channel for data and system control information transmitted
721 between networks. VPNs are used most often to protect communications carried over public networks
722 from eavesdropping and interception. A VPN can provide several types of data protection, including
723 confidentiality, integrity, authentication of data origin, replay protection, and access control that help
724 reduce the risks of transmitting data between network components.

725 VPN connections apply an additional layer of encryption to the communication between remote devices
726 and the internal network, and VPN gateways can enforce access control decisions by limiting what
727 devices or applications can connect to them. Integration with other security mechanisms allows a VPN
728 gateway to base access control decisions on more risk factors than it may be able to collect on its own;
729 examples include a device's level of compliance with mobile security policies or the list of installed
730 applications as reported by an integrated EMM and/or MTD.

731 *NIAP's Module for Virtual Private Network (VPN) Gateways 1.0* [14], in combination with *Protection*
732 *Profile for Network Devices* [15], describes important capabilities and security requirements to expect
733 from VPN gateways.

734 In a BYOD deployment, an enterprise can also leverage a per-application VPN to provide a secure
735 connection over the VPN tunnel strictly when using enterprise applications on the mobile device.
736 Personal applications on the device would not be allowed to use the VPN, ensuring the enterprise has
737 visibility into enterprise traffic only. This is especially important to BYOD deployments, whose devices
738 may connect over a wide variety of wireless networks. It also provides a layer of privacy protection for
739 employees by preventing personal mobile device traffic from being routed through the enterprise.

740 4.3.4 Mobile Application Vetting Service

741 Mobile application vetting services use a variety of static, dynamic, and behavioral techniques to
742 determine if an application demonstrates any behaviors that pose a security or privacy risk. The risk may
743 be to a device owner or user, to parties that own data on the device, or to external systems to which the
744 application connects. The set of detected behaviors is often aggregated to generate a singular score that
745 estimates the level of risk (or conversely, trustworthiness) attributed to an application. Clients can often
746 adjust the values associated with given behaviors (e.g., hardcoded cryptographic keys) to tailor the score

747 for their unique risk posture. Those scores may be further aggregated to present a score that represents
748 the overall risk or trustworthiness posed by the set of applications currently installed on a given device.

749 Mobile applications, malicious or benign, can affect both security and user privacy negatively. A
750 malicious application can contain code intended to exploit vulnerabilities present in potentially any
751 targeted hardware, firmware, or software on the device. Alternatively, or in conjunction with exploit
752 code, a malicious application may misuse any device, personal, or behavioral data to which it has been
753 explicitly or implicitly granted access, such as contacts, clipboard data, or location services. Benign
754 applications may still present vulnerabilities or weaknesses that malicious applications can exploit to
755 gain unauthorized access to the device's data or functionality. Further, benign applications may place
756 user privacy at risk by collecting more information than is necessary for it to deliver the functionality
757 desired by the user.

758 While not specific to applications, some services may include device-based risks (e.g., lack of disk
759 encryption or vulnerable OS version) in their analysis to provide a more comprehensive assessment of
760 the risk or trustworthiness presented by a device when running an application or service.

761 While NIAP does not provide a protection profile for application vetting services, their *Protection Profile
762 for Application Software* [16] describes security requirements to be expected from mobile applications.
763 Many mobile application vetting vendors provide capabilities to automate evaluation of applications
764 against NIAP's requirements.

765 Application vetting services help improve the security and privacy posture of the mobile devices by as-
766 ssuming the risk of the applications that may be installed on a personally owned device. Depending on
767 the deployment strategy, the application vetting service may analyze all installed applications, enter-
768 prise-only applications, or no applications.

769 4.3.5 Mobile Threat Defense

770 MTD generally takes the form of an application that is installed on the device that provides information
771 about the device's threat posture based on risks, security, and activity on the device. This is also known
772 as endpoint protection. Ideally, the MTD solution will be able to detect unwanted activity and properly
773 inform the user and BYOD administrators so they can act to prevent or limit the harm that an attacker
774 could cause. Additionally, MTD solutions may integrate with EMM solutions to leverage the MTD agent's
775 greater on-device management controls and enforcement capabilities, such as blocking a malicious
776 application from being launched until the user can remove it.

777 While detecting threats, MTD products typically analyze device-based threats, application-based threats,
778 and network-based threats. Device-based threats include outdated OS versions, nonsecure
779 configurations, elevation of privileges, unmanaged profiles, and compromised devices. Application-
780 based threat detection can provide similar functionality to that of dedicated application vetting services.
781 However, application-based threat detection may not provide the same level of detail in its analysis as
782 dedicated application vetting services. Network-based threats include use of unencrypted and/or public
783 Wi-Fi networks and attacks such as active attempts to intercept and decrypt network traffic.

784 Because BYOD mobile phones can have a wide variety of installed applications and usage scenarios,
785 MTD helps improve the security and privacy posture by providing an agent-based capability to detect
786 unwanted activity.

787 4.3.6 Mobile Operating System Capabilities

788 Mobile OS capabilities are available without the use of additional security features. They are included as
789 part of the mobile device's core capabilities. The following mobile OS capabilities can be found in mobile
790 devices, particularly mobile phones.

791 4.3.6.1 Secure Boot

792 Secure boot is a general term that refers to a system architecture that is designed to prevent and detect
793 any unauthorized modification to the boot process. A system that successfully completes a secure boot
794 has loaded its start-up sequence information into a trusted OS. A common mechanism is for the first
795 program executed (a boot loader) to be immutable (stored on read-only memory or implemented
796 strictly in hardware). Further, the integrity of mutable code is cryptographically verified by either
797 immutable or verified code prior to execution. This process establishes a chain of trust that can be
798 traced back to immutable, implicitly trustworthy code. Using an integrated TEE as part of a secure boot
799 process is preferable to an implementation that uses software alone [17].

800 4.3.6.2 Device Attestation

801 This is an extension of the secure boot process that involves the OS (or more commonly, an integrated
802 TEE) providing cryptographically verifiable proof that it has a known and trusted identity and is in a
803 trustworthy state. This means that all software running on the device is free from unauthorized
804 modification.

805 Device attestation requires cryptographic operations using an immutable private key that can be verified
806 by a trusted third party, which is typically the original equipment manufacturer of the TEE or device
807 platform vendor. Proof of possession of a valid key establishes the integrity of the first link in a chain of
808 trust that preserves the integrity of all other pieces of data used in the attestation. It will include unique
809 device identifiers, metadata, the results of integrity checks on mutable software, and possibly metrics
810 from the boot or attestation process itself [17].

811 4.3.6.3 Mobile Device Management Application Programming Interfaces

812 Mobile OS and platform-integrated firmware can provide a number of built-in security features that are
813 generally active by default. Examples include disk- and file-level encryption, verification of digital
814 signatures for installed software and updates, a device unlock code, remote device lock, and automatic
815 device wipe following a series of failed device unlock attempts. The user can directly configure some of
816 these features via a built-in application or through a service provided by the device platform vendor.

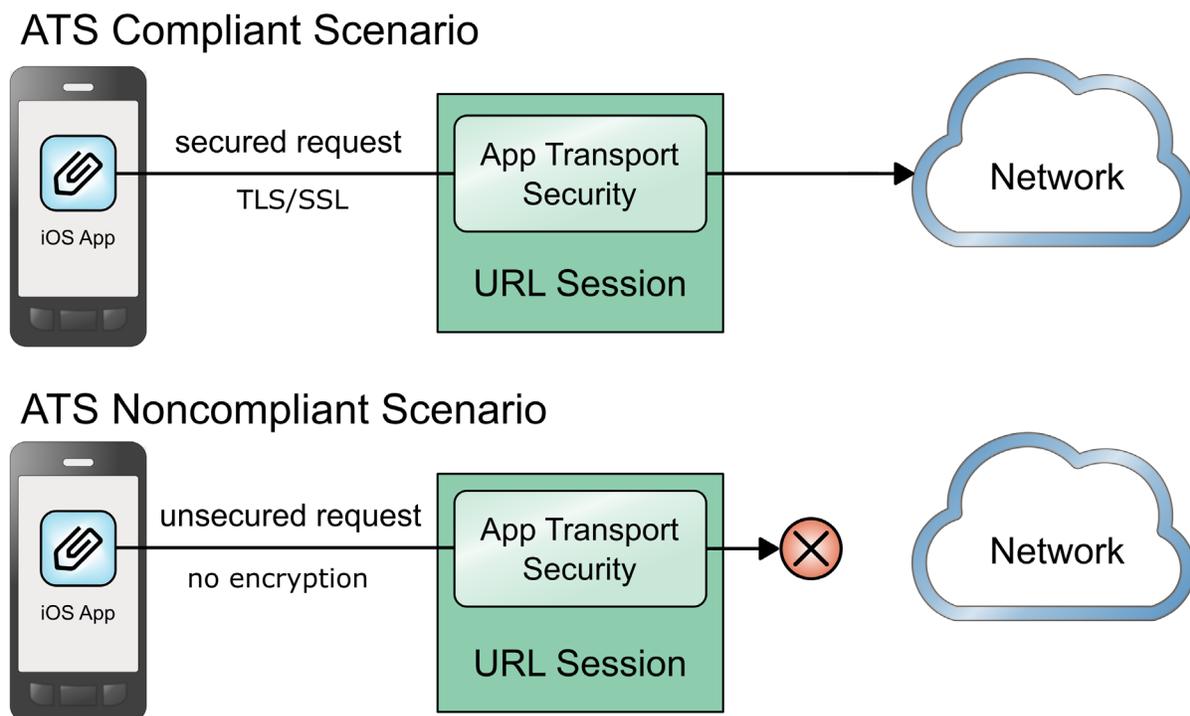
817 Additionally, mobile operating systems expose an application programming interface (API) to MDM
818 products that allow an organization that manages a device to have greater control over these and many
819 more settings that might not be directly accessible to the device user. Management APIs allow

820 enterprises using integrated EMM or MDM products to manage devices more effectively and efficiently
 821 than they could by using the built-in application alone.

822 *4.3.6.4 iOS App Transport Security*

823 App Transport Security (ATS) is a networking security feature on Apple iOS devices that increases data
 824 integrity and privacy for applications and extensions [18], [19]. ATS requires that the network
 825 connections made by applications are secured through the Transport Layer Security protocol, which
 826 uses reliable cipher suites and certificates. In addition, ATS blocks any connection that does not meet
 827 minimum security requirements. For applications linked to iOS 9.0 and later, ATS is enabled by default.
 828 Figure 4-2 shows how ATS compliant and noncompliant applications function. As demonstrated in the
 829 figure, secured application requests are allowed, and nonsecure requests are blocked.

830 **Figure 4-2 iOS App Transport Security**



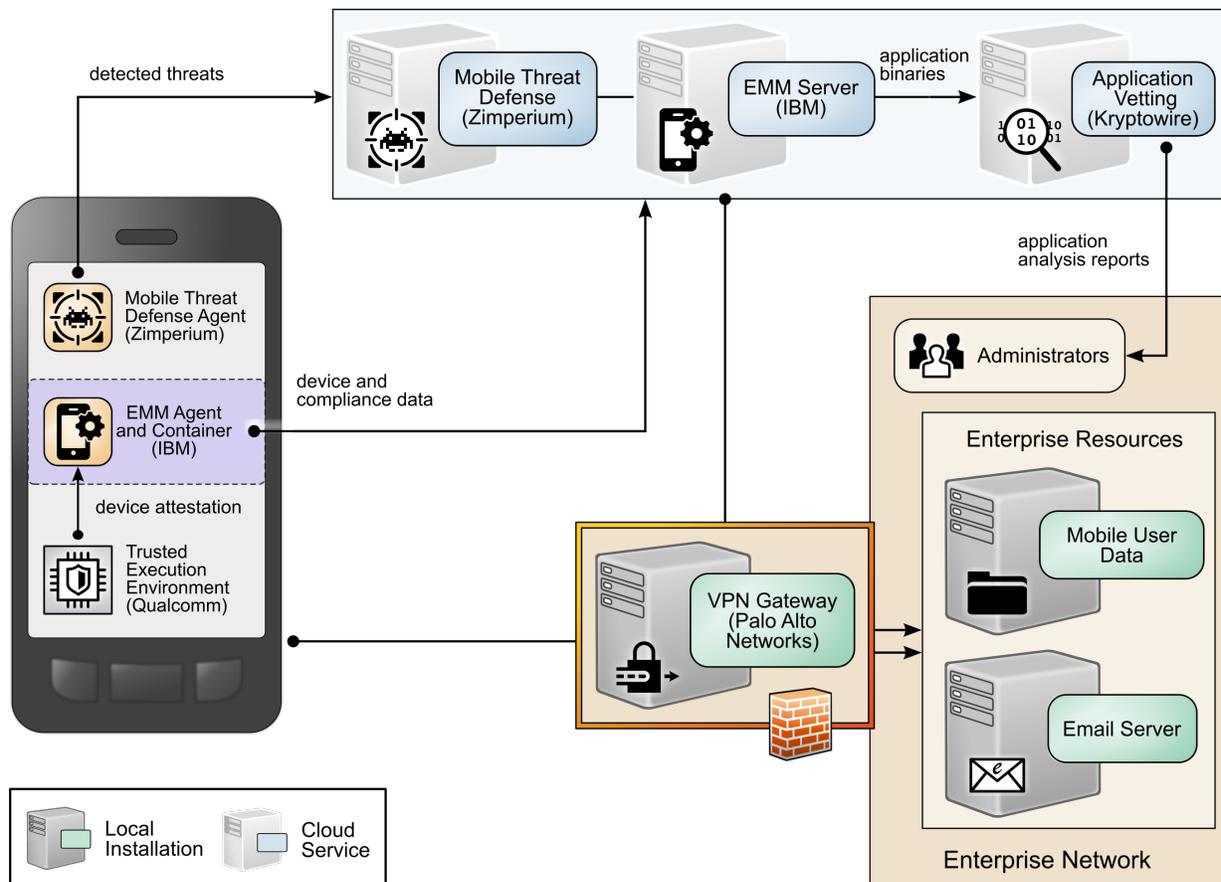
831 *4.3.6.5 Android Network Security Configuration*

832 With data privacy becoming even more important, Google released mobile OS enhancements to protect
 833 data that traverses Android devices and endpoints [20], [21]. The Android Network Security
 834 Configuration prevents applications from transmitting sensitive data unintentionally in unencrypted
 835 cleartext. By default, `cleartextTrafficPermitted` is set to `false`. Through the Android Network
 836 Security Configuration feature, developers can designate what certification authorities are trusted to
 837 ensure secure communications and issue certificates.

838 4.4 Architecture Description

839 The example solution architecture consists of the security technologies described in Section 4.3. The
 840 security technologies are further integrated with broader enterprise security mechanisms and a VPN
 841 gateway as shown in Figure 4-3. This example solution provides a broad range of capabilities to securely
 842 provision and manage devices, protect against and detect device compromise, and provide secure
 843 access to enterprise resources to only authorized mobile users and devices.

844 Figure 4-3 Example Solution Architecture



845 The NCCoE worked with industry experts to develop an open, standards-based, architecture using
 846 commercially-available products to address the threats and problematic data actions identified in
 847 Section 4.1.

848 Where possible, the architecture uses components that are present on the NIAP Product Compliant List,
 849 meaning that the product has been successfully evaluated against a NIAP-approved protection profile.
 850 The NIAP collaborates with a broad community, including industry, government, and international
 851 partners, to publish technology-specific security requirements and tests in the form of protection
 852 profiles. The requirements and tests in these protection profiles are intended to ensure that evaluated
 853 products address identified security threats and provide risk mitigation measures.

854 The security and privacy characteristics of the architecture result from many of the capability
855 integrations outlined in Section 4.5.

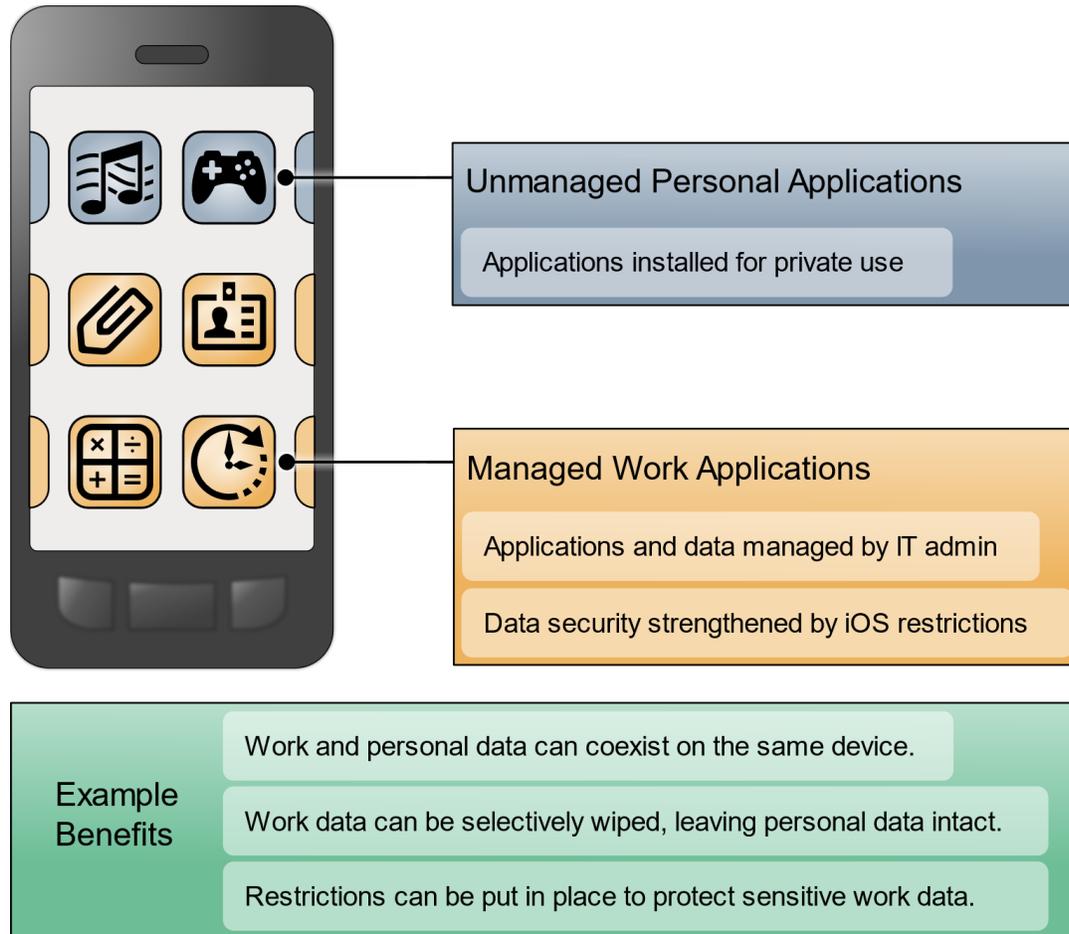
856 **4.5 Enterprise Integration of the Employees' Personally Owned Mobile** 857 **Devices**

858 One key benefit of BYOD solutions for employees is the ability to access both work and personal data on
859 the same device. While the technical approaches differ between iOS and Android devices, both
860 operating systems offer the following types of features for managing the coexistence of work and
861 personal data on devices [22], [23]:

- 862 ▪ data flow restriction between enterprise and personal applications
- 863 ▪ restriction of application installation from unknown sources
- 864 ▪ selective wiping to remove enterprise data and preserve personal data
- 865 ▪ device passcode requirement enforcement
- 866 ▪ application configuration control
- 867 ▪ identity and certificate authority certificate support

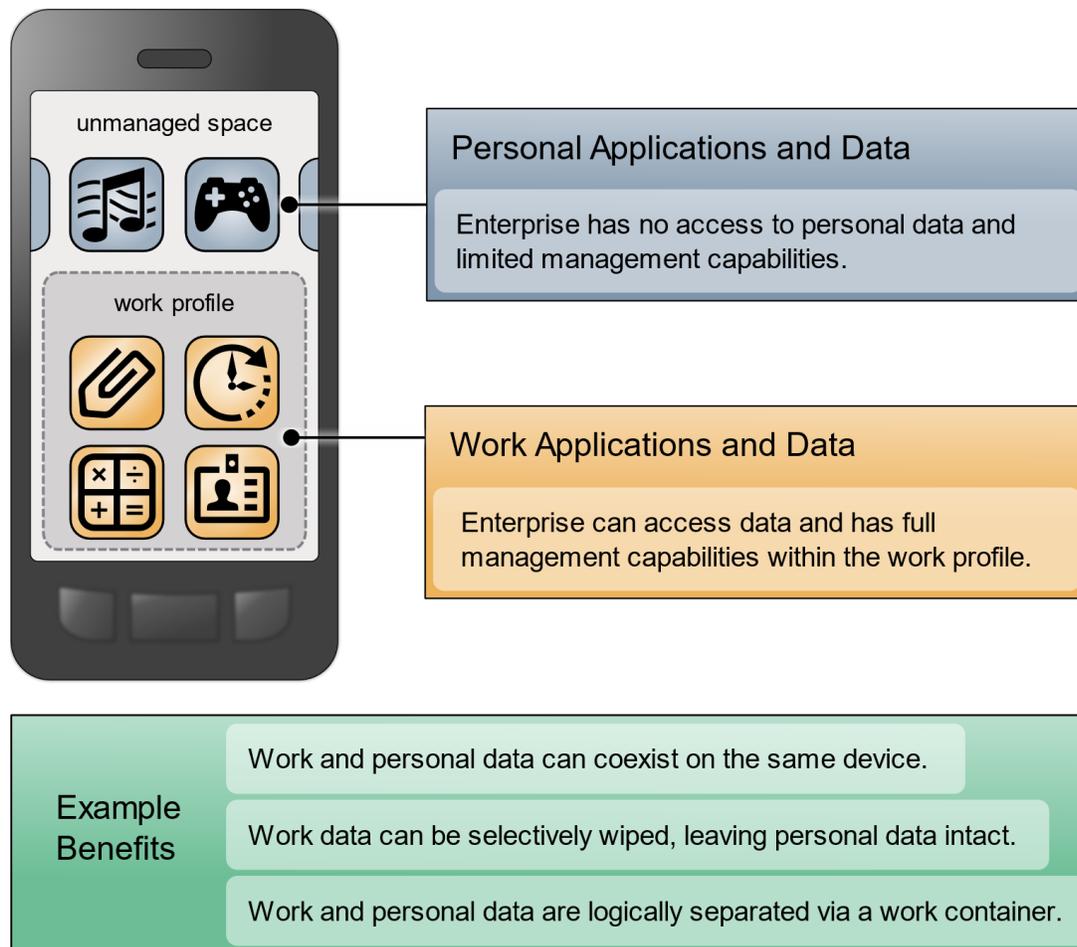
868 Illustrating this concept, Figure 4-4 iOS Application Management and Benefits, shows enterprise
869 integration for managed and unmanaged applications on iOS devices. To protect sensitive work data,
870 application restrictions, such as preventing the ability to copy data between work and personal
871 application, are applied.

872 **Figure 4-4 iOS Application Management and Benefits**



873 As illustrated in Figure 4-5, for Android devices, work applications can be separated into a container,
874 with data access restricted between the personal and work container applications.

875 **Figure 4-5 Android Application Management and Benefits**



876 4.5.1 Microsoft Active Directory Integration

877 The example solution is integrated with Microsoft Active Directory (AD), which provides both enterprise
878 identity management and certificate enrollment services via public key infrastructure. International
879 Business Machines (IBM) MaaS360 connects directly to the domain controller and the Network Device
880 Enrollment Service (NDES) servers via an IBM Cloud Extender installed on the local intranet, while
881 GlobalProtect connects to the domain controller via the Palo Alto Networks firewall's Lightweight
882 Directory Access Protocol service route.

883 By integrating directly with the AD infrastructure, administrators can configure MaaS360 to accept
884 enrollment requests based on user groups in AD. GlobalProtect can inherit these roles and enforce
885 access control protocols to restrict/deny permissions to the VPN. The AD integration is also used within
886 MaaS360 to provide policy-based access to the MaaS360 administration console.

887 The Certificate Integration module within the MaaS360 Cloud Extender allows user certificates to be
888 installed on the user's devices when enrolling with MaaS360. These certificates are then validated in
889 GlobalProtect during the VPN authentication sequence, along with the user's corporate username and
890 password. The Cloud Extender requests these certificates from the NDES server by using the Simple
891 Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP).

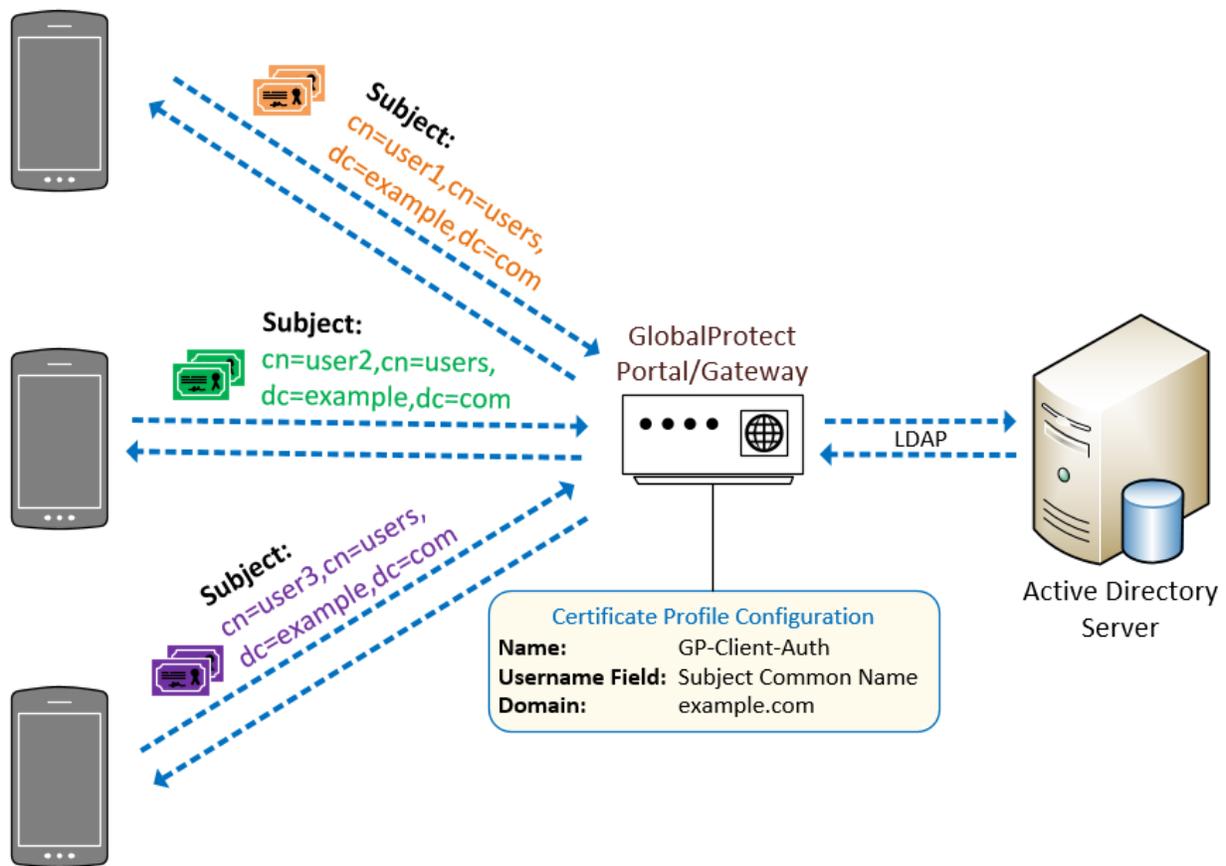
892 4.5.2 Mobile Device Enrollment

893 The example solution shown in Figure 4-6 mitigates the potential for SCEP to be remotely exploited by
894 restricting certificate enrollment to mobile devices that are connected to a dedicated enterprise-
895 managed Wi-Fi network. The uniform resource locator (URL) of the NDES server is resolvable only on
896 this managed Wi-Fi network.

897 Furthermore, the NDES server is configured to require a dynamic challenge with each request. The Cloud
898 Extender does this by including a one-time password with each request. This helps prevent unknown
899 devices from requesting certificates. These certificates can then be used to prove identity when
900 authenticating with the GlobalProtect VPN.

901 The certificate template includes the user's username and email address. This allows the GlobalProtect
902 gateway to enforce access control and identity verification.

903 Figure 4-6 Example Solution VPN Authentication Architecture

904 **4.6 Mobile Components Integration**

905 IBM MaaS360 supports integration of third-party applications and cloud services via a representational
 906 state transfer (REST) API [24]. External services are authenticated via access tokens, obtained through
 907 MaaS360 support. Zimperium and Kryptowire used the REST API [25].

908 Table 4-3 identifies the commercially available products used in this example solution and how they
 909 align with the mobile security technologies. For additional information, Appendices G and H contain a
 910 mapping of these technologies to the cybersecurity and privacy standards and best practices that each
 911 product provides in the example solution.

912 **Table 4-3 Commercially Available Products Used**

Commercially Available Product	Mobile Security Technology
IBM MaaS360 Mobile Device Management (SaaS) Version 10.73 IBM MaaS360 Mobile Device Management Agent Version 3.91.5 (iOS), 6.60 (Android) IBM MaaS360 Cloud Extender Cloud Extender Modules: Certificate Integration Module Version 2.96.000 Cloud Extender Base Module Version 2.96.000 Cloud Extender Basic Module Device Version 2.96.000 MaaS360 Configuration Utility Module Version 2.96.200 Mobile Device Management Module Version 2.31.020 User Authentication Module Version 2.96.200	mobile device management
Kryptowire Cloud Service	application vetting
Palo Alto Networks PA-VM-100 Version 9.0.1 Palo Alto Networks GlobalProtect VPN Client Version 5.0.6-14 (iOS), 5.0.2-6 (Android)	firewall virtual private network
Qualcomm (Version is mobile device dependent)	trusted execution environment
Zimperium Defense Suite Zimperium Console Version vGA-4.23.1 Zimperium zIPS Agent Version 4.9.2 (Android and iOS)	mobile threat defense

913 **4.6.1 Zimperium–MaaS360**

914 Through the MaaS360 REST API, Zimperium can retrieve various device attributes, such as device name,
 915 model, OS, OS version, and owner’s email address. It then continuously monitors the device’s risk
 916 posture through the Zimperium Intrusion Prevention System (zIPS) application and reports any changes
 917 in the posture to MaaS360. This enables MaaS360 administrators to apply different device policies and
 918 enforcement actions based on the risk posture of a device.

919 When a device is enrolled with MaaS360, the zIPS application is automatically installed and configured
 920 on the device. When the user first launches the zIPS application, it will automatically enroll the device in
 921 Zimperium’s MTD service. zIPS will then continuously monitor the device for threats, and any detected

922 threats will be reported to Zimperium. Zimperium can then report to MaaS360 if any changes in risk
923 posture occurred.

924 MaaS360 can respond to the following risk posture levels, as assigned by Zimperium:

- 925 ▪ low
- 926 ▪ normal
- 927 ▪ elevated
- 928 ▪ critical

929 4.6.2 Kryptowire–MaaS360

930 Through the MaaS360 REST API, Kryptowire can retrieve a list of enrolled devices, device metadata, and
931 the inventory of applications installed on those devices. This allows Kryptowire to automatically analyze
932 all new applications installed on enrolled devices, ensuring that the risk posture of the devices, and
933 therefore the enterprise, stays at an acceptable level.

934 Kryptowire also has configurable threat scores for various factors, such as requested permissions and
935 hardcoded encryption keys.

936 The threat scores can be configured to one of four levels:

- 937 ▪ low
- 938 ▪ medium
- 939 ▪ high
- 940 ▪ critical

941 The administrator can configure a threat score alert threshold and an email address to receive alerts
942 when an application’s threat score is at or above the threshold. The administrator can then take
943 appropriate action on the device in MaaS360.

944 Further, Kryptowire can provide information about applications including the latest version, when it was
945 last seen, when tracking began, and the number of versions that have been seen.

946 4.6.3 Palo Alto Networks–MaaS360

947 Palo Alto Networks GlobalProtect VPN secures remote connections from mobile devices. MaaS360
948 offers specific configuration options for the GlobalProtect client, using certificate-based authentication
949 to the GlobalProtect gateway and available for Android and iOS, that facilitate deployment of VPN
950 clients and enabled VPN access. Section 4.5 presents details of the certificate enrollment process.

951 Two components of the Palo Alto Networks next-generation firewall compose the VPN architecture used
952 in this example solution—a GlobalProtect portal and a GlobalProtect gateway. The portal provides the
953 management functions for the VPN infrastructure. Every endpoint that participates in the GlobalProtect
954 network receives configuration information from the portal, including information about available

955 gateways as well as any client certificates that may be required to connect to the GlobalProtect
956 gateway(s). A GlobalProtect gateway provides security enforcement for network traffic. The
957 GlobalProtect gateway in this example solution is configured to provide mobile device users with access
958 to specific enterprise resources from the secure contexts after a successful authentication and
959 authorization decision.

960 The VPN tunnel negotiation between the VPN endpoint/mobile device context and the VPN gateway has
961 four steps: (1) The portal provides the client configuration, (2) a user logs into the system, (3) the agent
962 automatically connects to the gateway and establishes a VPN tunnel, and (4) the security policy on the
963 gateway enables access to internal and external applications.

964 For this example solution, a per-application VPN configuration is enforced on iOS and an always-on work
965 container VPN configuration on Android. This configuration forces the device to automatically establish
966 a VPN connection to the GlobalProtect gateway whenever an application in the predefined list of
967 applications runs on the device or when an application in the work container is launched.

968 4.6.4 iOS and Android MDM Integration

969 Both iOS and Android integrate directly with MaaS360. Configuration profiles manage iOS devices.
970 Configuration profiles can force security policies such as VPN usage, ActiveSync support, access to cloud
971 services, application compliance, passcode policy, device restrictions, and Wi-Fi settings.

972 Android devices are managed by Android Enterprise, which provides controls for both the device itself
973 and the work container. The work container is a special folder on the phone that stores all the
974 enterprise applications and data, ensuring separation from personal applications and data. This is
975 implemented as a profile owner solution, as opposed to Corporate-Owned Personally-Enabled (COPE),
976 which is implemented as a device owner solution.

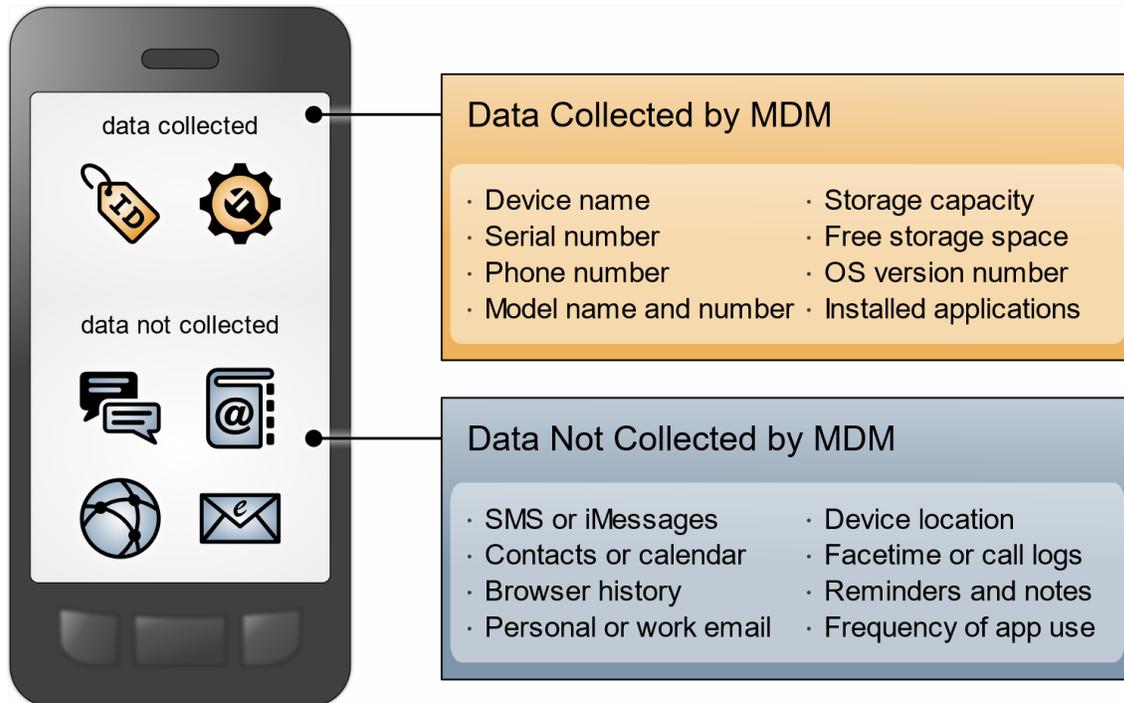
977 4.7 Privacy Settings: Mobile Device Data Processing

978 This section takes a look at components within the example architecture and the type of information an
979 enterprise may access from an employee's personal mobile device through those components.
980 Understanding the type of data an enterprise has access to can be helpful when understanding any
981 privacy implications.

982 4.7.1 EMM: MaaS360

983 When a personal mobile phone is connected to an EMM system, some data is collected and visible to
984 the enterprise. While additional data can be collected, our example solution collects only the data
985 shown in Figure 4-7 to help protect employee privacy. This information is provided by MaaS360 to
986 Kryptowire's application vetting capability. Kryptowire then uses the MaaS360 supplied information to
987 determine application security characteristics. IBM provides documentation with more details on the
988 information that MaaS360 collects and processes [26].

989 Figure 4-7 Data Collected by Example Solution Mobile Device Management



990 As shown in Figure 4-8, administrators can restrict collection of location and/or application inventory
 991 information. When an administrator restricts location collection, the administrator cannot see any
 992 location information about devices. Similarly, when an administrator restricts application inventory
 993 information, MaaS360 will not collect applications that are not distributed through the enterprise and
 994 therefore, will not transmit them to third-party application-vetting services. Both privacy controls can be
 995 applied to specific device groups—for example, COPE devices could have their location information
 996 collected—but location collection can be disabled for personal devices.

997 **Figure 4-8 Example Solution Mobile Device Management Privacy Settings**

The screenshot displays the IBM MaaS360 interface with the following settings:

- Restrict Location Information:**
 - Restrict administrators from collecting location indicators such as Physical Address, Geographical Coordinates & History, IP Address and SSID.
 - Select Applicable Ownership Types:
 - Corporate owned
 - Employee owned
 - Unknown
 - Select Applicable Group: All Devices (dropdown)
- Restrict App Inventory Information:**
 - Restrict administrators from collecting personal App information. Apps distributed via the enterprise app catalog or part of corporate security policy will continue to be tracked.
 - NOTE: In case of Windows Desktops or Laptops, it is not possible to clearly distinguish corporate packages of type .msi or .exe from personal packages. Hence, windows packages will always be treated as personal apps and their information will not be collected when this setting is enabled.
 - Select Applicable Ownership Types:
 - Corporate owned
 - Employee owned
 - Unknown
 - Select Applicable Group: All Devices (dropdown)

998 4.7.2 MTD: Zimperium

999 Zimperium provides configurable settings for both what data is collected, as well as when it is collected.
 1000 Data is collected:

- 1001 at login when the user launches the zIPS application
- 1002 when a threat is reported
- 1003 periodically, when the zIPS application checks in to the zConsole

1004 Table 4-4 shows the data that is collected during each of the three scenarios above. Additional infor-
 1005 mation regarding data item contents follows the table.

1006 Note: Administrators who are managing Zimperium cannot disable the collection of the bolded data
 1007 items (Network, Device, and Carrier Information) shown in Table 4-4 Data Collected by Zimperium.

1008 Table 4-4 Data Collected by Zimperium

Time	Data Item
At login	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Location (Street, City, or Country) ▪ Application Binaries (Android) ▪ Network ▪ Device ▪ Application Forensics ▪ Carrier Information ▪ User Details
Threat	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Location (Street, City, or Country) ▪ Network ▪ Application Forensics ▪ Running Processes (Android) ▪ Site Insight Risky URLs ▪ Attacker's Network
Periodically	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Location (Street, City, or Country) ▪ Network ▪ Application Binaries (Android) ▪ Application Forensics

1009 The Device data item contains the following information:

- 1010 ▪ root/jailbreak status
- 1011 ▪ OS version
- 1012 ▪ OS known vulnerabilities
- 1013 ▪ developer mode enabled
- 1014 ▪ process list
- 1015 ▪ file system changes

- 1016 ▪ device international mobile equipment identity (IMEI)
- 1017 ▪ device IP
- 1018 ▪ device media access control (MAC) address
- 1019 ▪ location

1020 The Network data item contains the following information:

- 1021 ▪ address resolution tables
- 1022 ▪ routing tables
- 1023 ▪ nearby networks
- 1024 ▪ network SSID
- 1025 ▪ external IP
- 1026 ▪ gateway MAC

1027 The Application data item contains the following information:

- 1028 ▪ application ID
- 1029 ▪ application version
- 1030 ▪ hash
- 1031 ▪ malware detection (yes or no with type of malware)
- 1032 ▪ libraries used
- 1033 ▪ permissions
- 1034 ▪ privacy risk
- 1035 ▪ security risk
- 1036 ▪ location in device file system
- 1037 ▪ network connections

1038 zIPS must collect certain data items to properly communicate with the zConsole. These items include:

- 1039 ▪ user credentials (email address, Zimperium-specific password)
- 1040 ▪ device hash (MD5 of IMEI or serial number as an identifier)
- 1041 ▪ device operating system
- 1042 ▪ device push token
- 1043 ▪ hash of local z9 database
- 1044 ▪ time and name of threat detection when a threat occurs

1045 4.7.3 VPN: Palo Alto Networks

1046 The Palo Alto Networks VPN uses information about the device as it establishes VPN connections. The
1047 data collected by the VPN includes information about:

- 1048 ▪ device name
- 1049 ▪ logon domain
- 1050 ▪ operating system
- 1051 ▪ app version
- 1052 ▪ mobile device network information to which the device is connected
- 1053 ▪ in addition, GlobalProtect collects whether the device is rooted or jailbroken

1054 5 Security and Privacy Analysis

1055 This section familiarizes the reader with:

- 1056 ▪ the example solution's assumptions and limitations
- 1057 ▪ results of the example solution's laboratory testing
- 1058 ▪ scenarios and findings that show the security and privacy characteristics addressed by the
1059 reference design
- 1060 ▪ the security and privacy control capabilities of the example solution

1061 The purpose of the security and privacy characteristics evaluation is to understand the extent to which
1062 the project meets its objectives of demonstrating capabilities for securing mobile devices within an
1063 enterprise by deploying EMM, MTD, application vetting, secure boot/image authentication, and VPN
1064 services while also protecting the privacy of employees participating in the BYOD implementation.

1065 5.1 Analysis Assumptions and Limitations

1066 The security and privacy characteristics analysis has the following limitations:

- 1067 ▪ It is neither a comprehensive test of all security and privacy components nor a red-team
1068 exercise.
- 1069 ▪ It does not identify all weaknesses.
- 1070 ▪ It does not include the lab infrastructure. It is assumed that devices are hardened. Testing these
1071 devices would reveal only weaknesses in implementation that would not be relevant to those
1072 adopting this reference architecture.

1073 5.2 Build Testing

1074 Test activities are provided to show how the example architecture addresses each threat event and
1075 problematic data action. The NIST SP 1800-22 Supplement, *Example Scenario: Putting Guidance into*

1076 *Practice*, provides insights into how an organization may determine its susceptibility to the threat before
1077 implementing the architecture detailed in this practice guide. The test activities contained in [Appendix E](#),
1078 Build Testing Details, demonstrate to the reader how Great Seneca validated their desired outcomes for
1079 the identified threat events and problematic data actions. [Appendix F](#), Threat Event Test Information,
1080 shows examples of test results for this build.

1081 **5.3 Scenarios and Findings**

1082 One aspect of the security evaluation involved assessing how well the reference design addresses the
1083 security characteristics that it was intended to support. The Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories
1084 were used to provide structure to the security assessment by consulting the specific sections of each
1085 standard that are cited in reference to a Subcategory. Using the Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories
1086 as a basis for organizing the analysis, allowed systematic consideration of how well the reference design
1087 supports the intended security characteristics.

1088 This section of the publication provides findings for the security and privacy characteristics that the ex-
1089 ample solution was intended to support. These topics are described in the following subsections:

- 1090 ▪ development of the Cybersecurity Framework and NICE Framework mappings
- 1091 ▪ threat events related to security and example solution architecture mitigations
- 1092 ▪ problematic data actions related to privacy and potential mitigations that organizations could
1093 employ

1094 An example scenario that demonstrates how an organization may use NIST SP 1800-22 and other NIST
1095 tools to implement a BYOD use case is discussed more in the NIST SP 1800-22 Supplement, *Example*
1096 *Scenario: Putting Guidance into Practice* of this practice guide.

1097 **5.3.1 Cybersecurity Framework and NICE Framework Work Roles Mappings**

1098 As we installed, configured, and used the products in the architecture, we determined and documented
1099 the example solution's functions and their corresponding Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories, along
1100 with other guidance alignment.

1101 This mapping will help users of this practice guide communicate with their organization's stakeholders
1102 regarding the security controls that the practice guide recommends for helping mitigate BYOD threats,
1103 and the workforce capabilities that the example solution will require.

1104 The products, frameworks, security controls, and workforce mappings are in [Appendix G](#).

1105 **5.3.2 Threat Events and Findings**

1106 As part of the findings, the threat events were mitigated in the example solution architecture using the
1107 concepts and technology shown in Table 5-1. Each threat event was matched with functions that helped
1108 mitigate the risks posed by the threat event.

1109 Note: TEE provided tamper-resistant processing environment capabilities that helped mitigate mobile
 1110 device runtime and memory threats in the example solution. We do not show the Qualcomm TEE
 1111 capability in the table because it is built into the phones used in this build.

1112 **Table 5-1 Threat Events and Findings Summary**

Threat Event	How the Example Solution Architecture Helped Mitigate the Threat Event	The Technology Function that Helps Mitigate the Threat Event
Threat Event 1: unauthorized access to sensitive information via a malicious or privacy-intrusive application	Provides administrators with insight into what corporate data that applications can access.	MTD EMM
Threat Event 2: theft of credentials through a short message service (SMS) or email phishing campaign	Utilized PAN-DB and URL filtering to block known malicious websites.	Firewall
Threat Event 3: unauthorized applications installed via URLs in SMS or email messages	Alerted the user and administrators to the presence of a sideloaded application.	EMM MTD
Threat Event 4: confidentiality and integrity loss due to exploitation of known vulnerability in the OS or firmware	Alerted the user that their OS is non-compliant.	EMM MTD
Threat Event 5: violation of privacy via misuse of device sensors	Application vetting reports indicated the sensors to which an application requested access.	Application vetting
Threat Event 6: loss of confidentiality of sensitive information via eavesdropping on unencrypted device communications	Application vetting reports indicated if an application sent data without proper encryption.	Application vetting
Threat Event 7: compromise of device integrity via observed, inferred, or brute-forced device unlock code	Enforced mandatory device wipe capabilities after ten failed unlock attempts.	EMM MTD
Threat Event 8: unauthorized access to backend services via authentication or credential storage vulnerabilities in internally developed applications	Application vetting reports indicated if an application used credentials improperly.	Application vetting

Threat Event	How the Example Solution Architecture Helped Mitigate the Threat Event	The Technology Function that Helps Mitigate the Threat Event
Threat Event 9: unauthorized access of enterprise resources from an unmanaged and potentially compromised device	Devices that were not enrolled in the EMM system were not able to connect to the corporate VPN.	VPN
Threat Event 10: loss of organizational data due to a lost or stolen device	Enforced passcode policies and device-wipe capabilities protected enterprise data.	EMM
Threat Event 11: loss of confidentiality of organizational data due to its unauthorized storage in non-organizationally managed services	Policies that enforce data loss prevention were pushed to devices.	EMM
Threat Event 12: unauthorized access to work applications via bypassed lock screen	The VPN requires the user to reenter their password after a predefined amount of time.	VPN

1113 **5.3.3 Privacy Problematic Data Actions and Findings**

1114 The privacy risk analysis found that three data actions in the build were potentially problematic data
 1115 actions for individuals. We identified potential technical mitigations that an organization could use to
 1116 lessen their impact, as shown below in Table 5-2. Organizations may also need to supplement these
 1117 technical mitigations with supporting policies and procedures.

1118 **Table 5-2 Summary of Privacy Problematic Data Actions and Findings**

Problematic Data Actions (for Employees)	How the Example Solution Architecture Helps Mitigate the Problematic Data Action	The Technology Function that Helps Mitigate the Problematic Data Action
PDA-1: unwarranted restriction	Blocks staff access to enterprise resources by removing the device from MDM control instead of wiping the device.	EMM

Problematic Data Actions (for Employees)	How the Example Solution Architecture Helps Mitigate the Problematic Data Action	The Technology Function that Helps Mitigate the Problematic Data Action
	<p>Enables only selectively wiping corporate resources on the device.</p> <p>Restricts staff access to system capabilities that permit removing device access or performing wipes.</p>	
PDA-2: surveillance	<p>Restricts staff access to system capabilities that permit reviewing data about employees and their devices.</p> <p>Limits or disables collection of specific data elements (e.g., location data).</p>	EMM
PDA-3: unanticipated revelation	<p>De-identifies personal and device data when not necessary to meet processing objectives.</p> <p>Encrypts data transmitted between parties.</p> <p>Limits or disables access to data.</p> <p>Limits or disables the collection of specific data elements.</p>	EMM

1119 **5.4 Security and Privacy Control Mappings**

1120 The security and privacy capabilities of the example solution were identified, and example security and
1121 privacy control maps were developed to show these in a standardized methodology.

1122 The control maps show the security and privacy characteristics for the products used in the example
1123 solution.

1124 The security control map can be found in [Appendix G](#). The privacy control map is in [Appendix H](#).

1125 **6 Example Scenario: Putting Guidance into Practice**

1126 To demonstrate how an organization may use NIST SP 1800-22 and other NIST tools to implement a
1127 BYOD use case, the NCCoE created the *Example Scenario: Putting Guidance into Practice* supplement for
1128 this practice guide.

1129 This example scenario shows how a fictional, small-to-mid-size organization (Great Seneca Accounting)
1130 can successfully navigate common enterprise BYOD security challenges.

1131 In the narrative example, Great Seneca Accounting completes a security risk assessment by using the
1132 guidance in NIST SP 800-30 [27] and the Mobile Threat Catalogue [5] to identify cybersecurity threats to
1133 the organization. The company then uses the NIST PRAM [8] to perform a privacy risk assessment.
1134 [Appendix F](#) and [Appendix G](#) of the Supplement describe these risk assessments in more detail. These risk
1135 assessments produce two significant conclusions:

- 1136 1. Great Seneca Accounting finds similar cybersecurity threats in its environment and problematic
1137 data actions for employee privacy as those discussed in NIST SP 1800-22, validating that the
1138 controls discussed in the example solution are relevant to their environment.
- 1139 2. The organization determines that it has a high-impact system, based on the impact guidance in
1140 NIST FIPS 200, *Minimum Security Requirements for Federal Information and Information Systems*
1141 [28], and needs to implement more controls beyond those identified in NIST SP 1800-22 to
1142 support the additional system components in its own solution (e.g., underlying OS, the data
1143 center where the equipment will reside).

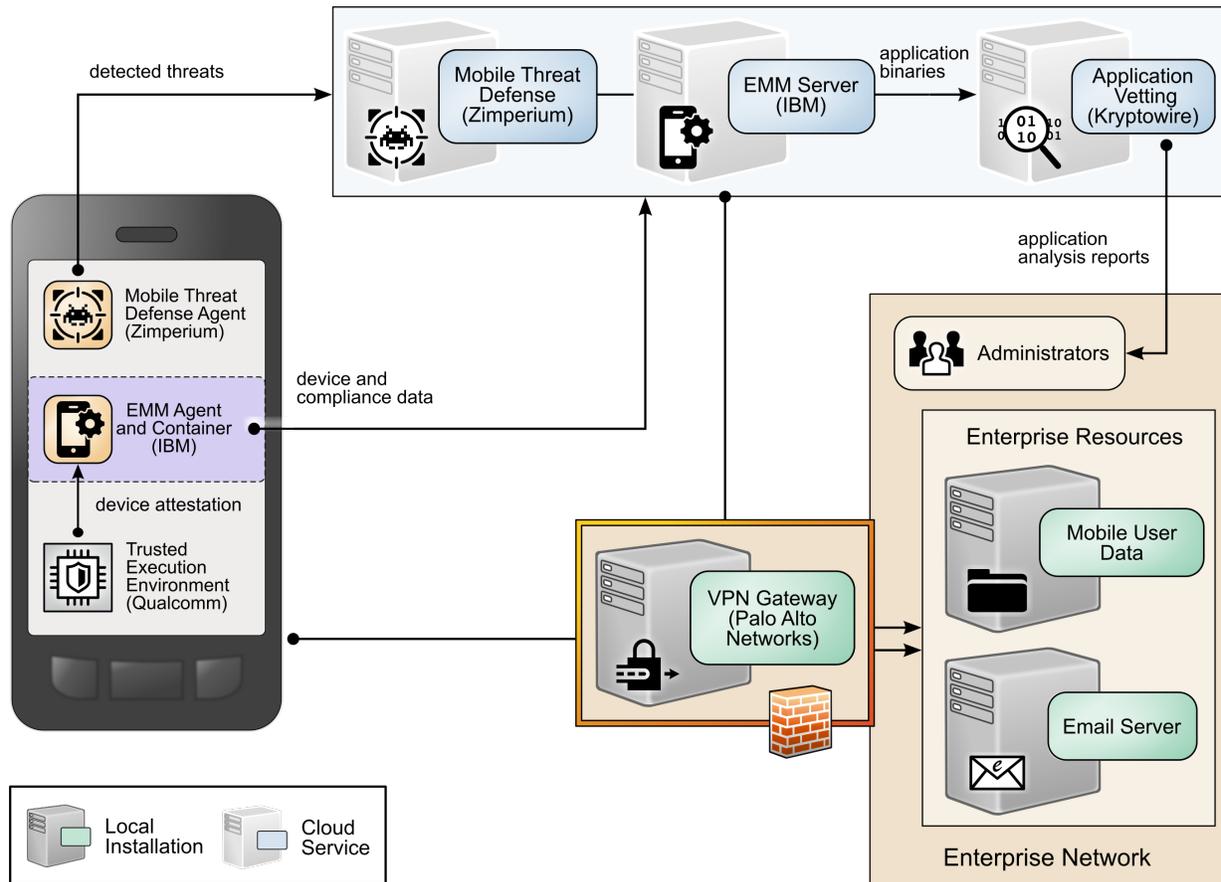
1144 As part of their review of NIST FIPS 200, Great Seneca Accounting selects security and privacy controls
1145 from NIST SP 800-53 [29] for their BYOD architecture implementation. They then tailor the control
1146 baselines based on the needs identified through the priority Subcategories in its cybersecurity and
1147 privacy Target Profiles.

1148 A detailed description of the implementation process that the fictional organization Great Seneca
1149 Accounting followed is provided in the NIST SP 1800-22 *Example Scenario: Putting Guidance into*
1150 *Practice* supplement of this practice guide.

1151 **7 Conclusion**

1152 This practice guide provides an explanation of mobile device security and privacy concepts and an
1153 example solution for organizations implementing a BYOD deployment. As shown in [Figure 7-1](#), this
1154 example solution applied multiple mobile device security technologies. These included a cloud-based
1155 EMM solution integrated with cloud- and agent-based mobile security technologies to help deploy a set
1156 of security and privacy capabilities that support the example solution.

1157 Figure 7-1 Example Solution Architecture



1158 Our fictional Great Seneca Accounting organization example scenario contained in the *Example*
 1159 *Scenario: Putting Guidance into Practice* supplement of this practice guide illustrates how the concepts
 1160 and architecture from this guide may be applied by an organization. Great Seneca started with an
 1161 information technology infrastructure that lacked mobile device security architecture concepts. Great
 1162 Seneca then employed multiple NIST cybersecurity and privacy risk management tools to understand
 1163 the gaps in its architecture and the methods available today to enhance the security and privacy of its
 1164 BYOD deployment.

1165 This practice guide also includes in Volume C a series of how-to guides—step-by-step instructions
 1166 covering the initial setup (installation or provisioning) and configuration for each component of the
 1167 architecture—to help security engineers rapidly deploy and evaluate our example solution in their test
 1168 environment.

1169 The example solution uses standards-based, commercially available products that can be used by an
 1170 organization interested in deploying a BYOD solution. The example solution provides recommendations
 1171 for enhancing the security and privacy infrastructure by integrating on-premises and cloud-hosted

1172 mobile security technologies. This practice guide provides an example solution that an organization may
1173 use in whole or in part as the basis for creating a custom solution that best supports their unique needs.

1174 **8 Future Build Considerations**

1175 For a future build, the team is considering a virtual mobile infrastructure (VMI) or unified endpoint
1176 management (UEM) solution.

1177 The VMI deployment could include installing an application on a device at enrollment time, which would
1178 grant access to a virtual phone contained within the corporate infrastructure. The virtual phone would
1179 then contain the corporate-supplied applications that an employee would require for performing
1180 standard mobile work tasks. The thin client deployment limits the storage of organizational data on the
1181 device and helps ensure that access to the organization's data uses security-enhancing capabilities.

1182 UEM would entail managing a user's mobile device ecosystem, potentially including laptops, mobile
1183 phones, and IoT devices (e.g., smart watches and Bluetooth headsets).

1184 **Appendix A List of Acronyms**

AD	Active Directory
API	Application Programming Interface
ATS	App Transport Security
BYOD	Bring Your Own Device
CIS	Center for Internet Security
COPE	Corporate-Owned Personally-Enabled
EMM	Enterprise Mobility Management
FIPS	Federal Information Processing Standards
HTTP	Hypertext Transfer Protocol
HTTPS	Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure
IEC	International Electrotechnical Commission
IMEI	International Mobile Equipment Identity
IoT	Internet of Things
IP	Internet Protocol
ISO	International Organization for Standardization
IT	Information Technology
MDM	Mobile Device Management
MTD	Mobile Threat Defense
NCCoE	National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence
NIAP	National Information Assurance Partnership
NIST	National Institute of Standards and Technology
OS	Operating System
PII	Personally Identifiable Information
PIN	Personal Identification Number
REST	Representational State Transfer
RMF	Risk Management Framework
SCEP	Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol
SMS	Short Message Service
SP	Special Publication
SSL	Secure Sockets Layer
TE	Threat Event

DRAFT

TEE	Trusted Execution Environment
TLS	Transport Layer Security
UEM	Unified Endpoint Management
URL	Uniform Resource Locator
VPN	Virtual Private Network

Appendix B Glossary

Access Management	Access Management is the set of practices that enables only those permitted the ability to perform an action on a particular resource. The three most common Access Management services you encounter every day perhaps without realizing it are: Policy Administration, Authentication, and Authorization [30].
Availability	Ensure that users can access resources through remote access whenever needed [31].
Bring Your Own Device (BYOD)	A non-organization-controlled telework client device [31].
Confidentiality	Ensure that remote access communications and stored user data cannot be read by unauthorized parties [31].
Data Actions	System operations that process PII [32].
Disassociability	Enabling the processing of PII or events without association to individuals or devices beyond the operational requirements of the system [32].
Eavesdropping	An attack in which an Attacker listens passively to the authentication protocol to capture information which can be used in a subsequent active attack to masquerade as the Claimant [33] (definition located under eavesdropping attack).
Firewall	Firewalls are devices or programs that control the flow of network traffic between networks or hosts that employ differing security postures [34].
Integrity	Detect any intentional or unintentional changes to remote access communications that occur in transit [31].
Manageability	Providing the capability for granular administration of PII including alteration, deletion, and selective disclosure [32].
Mobile Device	A portable computing device that: (i) has a small form factor such that it can easily be carried by a single individual; (ii) is designed to operate without a physical connection (e.g., wirelessly transmit or receive information); (iii) possesses local, non-removable or removable data storage; and (iv) includes a self-contained power source. Mobile devices may also include voice communication capabilities, on-board sensors that allow the devices to capture information, and/or built-in features for

synchronizing local data with remote locations. Examples include smart phones, tablets, and E-readers [29].

Personally Identifiable Information (PII)	Any information about an individual maintained by an agency, including any information that can be used to distinguish or trace an individual's identity, such as name, Social Security number, date and place of birth, mother's maiden name, or biometric records; and any other information that is linked or linkable to an individual, such as medical, educational, financial, and employment information [35] (adapted from Government Accountability Office Report 08-536).
Predictability	Enabling of reliable assumptions by individuals, owners, and operators about PII and its processing by a system [32].
Privacy Event	The occurrence or potential occurrence of problematic data actions [2].
Problematic Data Action	A data action that could cause an adverse effect for individuals [2].
Threat	Any circumstance or event with the potential to adversely impact organizational operations (including mission, functions, image, or reputation), organizational assets, individuals, other organizations, or the Nation through an information system via unauthorized access, destruction, disclosure, or modification of information, and/or denial of service [27].
Vulnerability	Weakness in an information system, system security procedures, internal controls, or implementation that could be exploited by a threat source [27].

1186 Appendix C References

- 1187 [1] National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST). *NIST Framework for Improving Critical*
1188 *Infrastructure Cybersecurity*, Version 1.1 (Cybersecurity Framework). Apr. 16, 2018. [Online].
1189 Available: <https://www.nist.gov/cyberframework>.
- 1190 [2] NIST. *NIST Privacy Framework: A Tool for Improving Privacy Through Enterprise Risk*
1191 *Management*, Version 1.0 (Privacy Framework). Jan. 16, 2020. [Online]. Available:
1192 <https://www.nist.gov/privacy-framework>.
- 1193 [3] W. Newhouse et al., *National Initiative for Cybersecurity Education (NICE) Cybersecurity*
1194 *Workforce Framework*, NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-181 (2017 version), NIST, Gaithersburg,
1195 Md., Aug. 2017. Available: <https://csrc.nist.gov/publications/detail/sp/800-181/final>.
- 1196 [4] NIST. Risk Management Framework (RMF) Overview. [Online]. Available:
1197 [https://csrc.nist.gov/projects/risk-management/risk-management-framework-\(rmf\)-overview](https://csrc.nist.gov/projects/risk-management/risk-management-framework-(rmf)-overview).
- 1198 [5] NIST. Mobile Threat Catalogue. [Online]. Available: [https://pages.nist.gov/mobile-threat-](https://pages.nist.gov/mobile-threat-catalogue/)
1199 [catalogue/](https://pages.nist.gov/mobile-threat-catalogue/).
- 1200 [6] J. Franklin et al., *Guidelines for Managing the Security of Mobile Devices in the Enterprise*, NIST
1201 SP 800-124 Revision 2 (Draft), NIST, Gaithersburg, Md., Mar. 2020. Available:
1202 <https://csrc.nist.gov/publications/detail/sp/800-124/rev-2/draft>.
- 1203 [7] J. Franklin et al., *Mobile Device Security: Cloud and Hybrid Builds*, NIST SP 1800-4, NIST,
1204 Gaithersburg, Md., Feb. 21, 2019. Available: [https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/projects/building-](https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/projects/building-blocks/mobile-device-security/cloud-hybrid)
1205 [blocks/mobile-device-security/cloud-hybrid](https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/projects/building-blocks/mobile-device-security/cloud-hybrid).
- 1206 [8] NIST. NIST Privacy Risk Assessment Methodology. Jan. 16, 2020. [Online]. Available:
1207 <https://www.nist.gov/privacy-framework/nist-pram>.
- 1208 [9] Joint Task Force, *Risk Management Framework for Information Systems and Organizations: A*
1209 *System Life Cycle Approach for Security and Privacy*, NIST SP 800-37 Revision 2, NIST,
1210 Gaithersburg, Md., Dec. 2018. Available: [https://csrc.nist.gov/publications/detail/sp/800-](https://csrc.nist.gov/publications/detail/sp/800-37/rev-2/final)
1211 [37/rev-2/final](https://csrc.nist.gov/publications/detail/sp/800-37/rev-2/final).
- 1212 [10] Open Web Application Security Project (OWASP). “OWASP Mobile Top 10.” [Online]. Available:
1213 <https://owasp.org/www-project-mobile-top-10/>.
- 1214 [11] NIST. Privacy Engineering Program: Privacy Risk Assessment Methodology, Catalog of
1215 Problematic Data Actions and Problems. [Online]. Available: [https://www.nist.gov/itl/applied-](https://www.nist.gov/itl/applied-cybersecurity/privacy-engineering/resources)
1216 [cybersecurity/privacy-engineering/resources](https://www.nist.gov/itl/applied-cybersecurity/privacy-engineering/resources).

- 1217 [12] M. Sabt, "Trusted Execution Environment: What It is, and What It is Not." 14th IEEE
1218 International Conference on Trust, Security and Privacy in Computing and Communications,
1219 Helsinki, Finland, Aug. 2015. Available: [https://hal.archives-ouvertes.fr/hal-
1220 01246364/file/trustcom_2015_tee_what_it_is_what_it_is_not.pdf](https://hal.archives-ouvertes.fr/hal-01246364/file/trustcom_2015_tee_what_it_is_what_it_is_not.pdf).
- 1221 [13] National Information Assurance Partnership (NIAP). U.S. Government Approved Protection
1222 Profile—Extended Package for Mobile Device Management Agents Version 3.0. Nov. 21, 2016.
1223 [Online]. Available: https://www.niap-ccevs.org/MMO/PP/ep_mdm_agent_v3.0.pdf.
- 1224 [14] NIAP. U.S. Government Approved Protection Profile—Module for Virtual Private Network (VPN)
1225 Gateways 1.1. July 01, 2020. [Online]. Available: [https://www.niap-
1226 ccevs.org/Profile/Info.cfm?PPID=449&id=449](https://www.niap-ccevs.org/Profile/Info.cfm?PPID=449&id=449).
- 1227 [15] NIAP. U.S. Government Approved Protection Profile—collaborative Protection Profile for
1228 Network Devices Version 2.2e. Mar. 27, 2020. Available: [https://www.niap-
1229 ccevs.org/Profile/Info.cfm?PPID=447&id=447](https://www.niap-ccevs.org/Profile/Info.cfm?PPID=447&id=447).
- 1230 [16] NIAP. Approved Protection Profiles. [Online]. Available: [https://www.niap-
1231 ccevs.org/Profile/PP.cfm](https://www.niap-ccevs.org/Profile/PP.cfm).
- 1232 [17] Qualcomm. "Qualcomm Secure Boot and Image Authentication Technical Overview." [Online].
1233 Available: [https://www.qualcomm.com/media/documents/files/secure-boot-and-image-
1234 authentication-technical-overview-v1-0.pdf](https://www.qualcomm.com/media/documents/files/secure-boot-and-image-authentication-technical-overview-v1-0.pdf).
- 1235 [18] Apple Inc. "Preventing Insecure Network Connections." [Online]. Available:
1236 [https://developer.apple.com/documentation/security/preventing_insecure_network_connectio
1237 ns](https://developer.apple.com/documentation/security/preventing_insecure_network_connections).
- 1238 [19] Apple Inc. "Identifying the Source of Blocked Connections," [Online]. Available:
1239 [https://developer.apple.com/documentation/security/preventing_insecure_network_connectio
1240 ns/identifying_the_source_of_blocked_connections](https://developer.apple.com/documentation/security/preventing_insecure_network_connections/identifying_the_source_of_blocked_connections).
- 1241 [20] Android.com. "Network security configuration." Dec. 27, 2019. [Online]. Available:
1242 <https://developer.android.com/training/articles/security-config>.
- 1243 [21] NowSecure.com. "A Security Analyst's Guide to Network Security Configuration in Android P." [Online]. Available:
1244 [https://www.nowsecure.com/blog/2018/08/15/a-security-analysts-guide-
1245 to-network-security-configuration-in-android-p/](https://www.nowsecure.com/blog/2018/08/15/a-security-analysts-guide-to-network-security-configuration-in-android-p/).
- 1246 [22] Apple Inc. "Overview: Managing Devices & Corporate Data on iOS." July 2018. [Online].
1247 Available:
1248 [https://www.apple.com/business/docs/resources/Managing_Devices_and_Corporate_Data_on
1249 iOS.pdf](https://www.apple.com/business/docs/resources/Managing_Devices_and_Corporate_Data_on_iOS.pdf).

- 1250 [23] Google Android. "Build Android management solutions for enterprises." [Online]. Available:
1251 <https://developers.google.com/android/work>.
- 1252 [24] International Business Machines (IBM). "Web Services Integration Details." [Online]. Available:
1253 [https://developer.ibm.com/security/maas360/maas360-getting-started/maas360-web-services-](https://developer.ibm.com/security/maas360/maas360-getting-started/maas360-web-services-integration-details/)
1254 [integration-details/](https://developer.ibm.com/security/maas360/maas360-getting-started/maas360-web-services-integration-details/).
- 1255 [25] IBM. "IBM Community Public Wikis." [Online]. Available:
1256 [https://www.ibm.com/developerworks/community/wikis/home?lang=en-](https://www.ibm.com/developerworks/community/wikis/home?lang=en-us#!/wiki/W0dcb4f3d0760_48cd_9026_a90843b9da06/page/MaaS360%20REST%20API%20Usage)
1257 [us#!/wiki/W0dcb4f3d0760_48cd_9026_a90843b9da06/page/MaaS360%20REST%20API%20U](https://www.ibm.com/developerworks/community/wikis/home?lang=en-us#!/wiki/W0dcb4f3d0760_48cd_9026_a90843b9da06/page/MaaS360%20REST%20API%20Usage)
1258 [sage](https://www.ibm.com/developerworks/community/wikis/home?lang=en-us#!/wiki/W0dcb4f3d0760_48cd_9026_a90843b9da06/page/MaaS360%20REST%20API%20Usage).
- 1259 [26] IBM. "IBM MaaS360 GDPR Data Map (Persona Data Attributes)." [Online]. Available:
1260 [http://public.dhe.ibm.com/software/security/products/maas360/GDPR/Personal_Data_in_IBM](http://public.dhe.ibm.com/software/security/products/maas360/GDPR/Personal_Data_in_IBM_MaaS360.pdf)
1261 [_MaaS360.pdf](http://public.dhe.ibm.com/software/security/products/maas360/GDPR/Personal_Data_in_IBM_MaaS360.pdf).
- 1262 [27] Joint Task Force Transformation Initiative, *Guide for Conducting Risk Assessments*, NIST SP 800-
1263 30 Revision 1, NIST, Gaithersburg, Md., Sept. 2012. Available:
1264 <https://csrc.nist.gov/publications/detail/sp/800-30/rev-1/final>.
- 1265 [28] NIST. *Minimum Security Requirements for Federal Information and Information Systems*, Federal
1266 Information Processing Standards Publication (FIPS) 200, Mar. 2006. Available:
1267 <https://csrc.nist.gov/publications/detail/fips/200/final>.
- 1268 [29] Joint Task Force Transformation Initiative, *Security and Privacy Controls for Information Systems*
1269 *and Organizations*, NIST SP 800-53, NIST, Gaithersburg, Md., Jan. 2015. Available:
1270 <https://csrc.nist.gov/publications/detail/sp/800-53/rev-4/final>.
- 1271 [30] IDManagement.gov. "Federal Identity, Credential, and Access Management Architecture."
1272 [Online]. Available: <https://arch.idmanagement.gov/services/access/>.
- 1273 [31] M. Souppaya and K. Scarfone, *Guide to Enterprise Telework, Remote Access, and Bring Your Own*
1274 *Device (BYOD) Security*, NIST SP 800-46 Revision 2, NIST, Gaithersburg, Md., July 2016. Available:
1275 <https://csrc.nist.gov/publications/detail/sp/800-46/rev-2/final>.
- 1276 [32] S. Brooks et al., *An Introduction to Privacy Engineering and Risk Management in Federal*
1277 *Systems*, NIST Interagency or Internal Report 8062, Gaithersburg, Md., Jan. 2017. Available:
1278 <https://nvlpubs.nist.gov/nistpubs/ir/2017/NIST.IR.8062.pdf>.
- 1279 [33] P. Grassi et al., *Digital Identity Guidelines*, NIST SP 800-63-3, NIST, Gaithersburg, Md., June 2017.
1280 Available: <https://nvlpubs.nist.gov/nistpubs/SpecialPublications/NIST.SP.800-63-3.pdf>.

- 1281 [34] K. Stouffer et al., *Guide to Industrial Control Systems (ICS) Security*, NIST SP 800-82 Revision 2,
1282 NIST, Gaithersburg, Md., May 2015. Available:
1283 <https://nvlpubs.nist.gov/nistpubs/SpecialPublications/NIST.SP.800-82r2.pdf>.
- 1284 [35] E. McCallister et al., *Guide to Protecting the Confidentiality of Personally Identifiable Information*
1285 *(PII)*, NIST SP 800-122, NIST, Gaithersburg, Md., Apr. 2010. Available:
1286 <https://nvlpubs.nist.gov/nistpubs/Legacy/SP/nistspecialpublication800-122.pdf>.
- 1287 [36] J. Franklin et al., *Mobile Device Security: Corporate-Owned Personally-Enabled (COPE)*, NIST SP
1288 1800-21, NIST, Gaithersburg, Md., July 22, 2019. Available:
1289 <https://csrc.nist.gov/News/2019/NIST-Releases-Draft-SP-1800-21-for-Comment>.
- 1290 [37] NIST, *Guidelines for the Selection, Configuration, and Use of Transport Layer Security (TLS)*
1291 *Implementations*, NIST SP 800-52 Revision 2, August 2019. [Online]. Available:
1292 <https://csrc.nist.gov/publications/detail/sp/800-52/rev-2/final>.
- 1293 [38] Joint Task Force, *Security and Privacy Controls for Information Systems and Organizations (Final*
1294 *Public Draft)*, NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5, NIST, Gaithersburg, Md., Sept. 2020. Available:
1295 <https://csrc.nist.gov/publications/detail/sp/800-53/rev-5/final>.
- 1296 [39] S. Frankel et al., *Guide to SSL VPNs*, NIST SP 800-113, NIST, Gaithersburg, Md., July 2008.
1297 Available: <https://csrc.nist.gov/publications/detail/sp/800-113/final>.
- 1298 [40] M. Souppaya and K. Scarfone, *User's Guide to Telework and Bring Your Own Device (BYOD)*
1299 *Security*, NIST SP 800-114 Revision 1, NIST, Gaithersburg, Md., July 2016. Available:
1300 <https://csrc.nist.gov/publications/detail/sp/800-114/rev-1/final>.
- 1301 [41] M. Ogata et al., *Vetting the Security of Mobile Applications*, NIST SP 800-163 Revision 1, NIST,
1302 Gaithersburg, Md., Apr. 2019. Available:
1303 <https://nvlpubs.nist.gov/nistpubs/SpecialPublications/NIST.SP.800-163r1.pdf>.
- 1304 [42] NIST, *Protecting Controlled Unclassified Information in Nonfederal Systems*, NIST SP 800-171
1305 Revision 2, February 2020. [Online]. Available: <https://csrc.nist.gov/publications/detail/sp/800-171/rev-2/final>.
- 1307 [43] Center for Internet Security. Center for Internet Security home page. [Online]. Available:
1308 <https://www.cisecurity.org/>.
- 1309 [44] Executive Office of the President, "Bring Your Own Device: A Toolkit to Support Federal Agencies
1310 Implementing Bring Your Own Device (BYOD) Programs," Aug. 23, 2012. Available:
1311 <https://obamawhitehouse.archives.gov/digitalgov/bring-your-own-device>.

- 1312 [45] Federal CIO Council and Department of Homeland Security. *Mobile Security Reference*
1313 *Architecture Version 1.0*. May 23, 2013. [Online]. Available:
1314 [https://s3.amazonaws.com/sitesusa/wp-content/uploads/sites/1151/2016/10/Mobile-Security-](https://s3.amazonaws.com/sitesusa/wp-content/uploads/sites/1151/2016/10/Mobile-Security-Reference-Architecture.pdf)
1315 [Reference-Architecture.pdf](https://s3.amazonaws.com/sitesusa/wp-content/uploads/sites/1151/2016/10/Mobile-Security-Reference-Architecture.pdf).
- 1316 [46] Digital Services Advisory Group and Federal Chief Information Officers Council. *Government Use*
1317 *of Mobile Technology Barriers, Opportunities, and Gap Analysis*,. Dec. 2012. [Online]. Available:
1318 [https://s3.amazonaws.com/sitesusa/wp-](https://s3.amazonaws.com/sitesusa/wp-content/uploads/sites/1151/2016/10/Government_Mobile_Technology_Barriers_Opportunities_and_Gaps.pdf)
1319 [content/uploads/sites/1151/2016/10/Government Mobile Technology Barriers Opportunities](https://s3.amazonaws.com/sitesusa/wp-content/uploads/sites/1151/2016/10/Government_Mobile_Technology_Barriers_Opportunities_and_Gaps.pdf)
1320 [_and Gaps.pdf](https://s3.amazonaws.com/sitesusa/wp-content/uploads/sites/1151/2016/10/Government_Mobile_Technology_Barriers_Opportunities_and_Gaps.pdf).
- 1321 [47] International Organization for Standardization. “ISO/IEC 27001:2013 Information technology —
1322 Security techniques — Information security management systems — Requirements.” Oct. 2013.
1323 [Online]. Available: <https://www.iso.org/standard/54534.html>.
- 1324 [48] “Mobile Computing Decision.” [Online]. Available: [https://s3.amazonaws.com/sitesusa/wp-](https://s3.amazonaws.com/sitesusa/wp-content/uploads/sites/1151/2016/10/Mobile-Security-Decision-Framework-Appendix-B.pdf)
1325 [content/uploads/sites/1151/2016/10/Mobile-Security-Decision-Framework-Appendix-B.pdf](https://s3.amazonaws.com/sitesusa/wp-content/uploads/sites/1151/2016/10/Mobile-Security-Decision-Framework-Appendix-B.pdf).
- 1326 [49] Mobile Services Category Team (MSCT) Advanced Technology Academic Research Center
1327 (ATARC). “Mobility Strategy Development Guidelines, Working Group Document.” June 2017.
1328 [Online]. Available: [https://hallways.cap.gsa.gov/app/#/gateway/mobile-services-category-](https://hallways.cap.gsa.gov/app/#/gateway/mobile-services-category-team/9658/docs/12997/Agency_Mobility_Strategy_Deliverable.pdf)
1329 [team/9658/docs/12997/Agency_Mobility_Strategy_Deliverable.pdf](https://hallways.cap.gsa.gov/app/#/gateway/mobile-services-category-team/9658/docs/12997/Agency_Mobility_Strategy_Deliverable.pdf).
- 1330 [50] Mobile Services Category Team (MSCT) Advanced Technology Academic Research Center
1331 (ATARC). “Mobile Threat Protection App Vetting and App Security, Working Group Document.”
1332 July 2017. [Online]. Available: [https://hallways.cap.gsa.gov/app/#/gateway/mobile-services-](https://hallways.cap.gsa.gov/app/#/gateway/mobile-services-category-team/9658/docs/12996/Mobile_Threat_Protection_Deliverable.pdf)
1333 [category-team/9658/docs/12996/Mobile_Threat_Protection_Deliverable.pdf](https://hallways.cap.gsa.gov/app/#/gateway/mobile-services-category-team/9658/docs/12996/Mobile_Threat_Protection_Deliverable.pdf).
- 1334 [51] Mobile Services Category Team (MSCT). “Device Procurement and Management Guidance.”
1335 Nov. 2016. [Online]. Available: [https://hallways.cap.gsa.gov/app/#/gateway/information-](https://hallways.cap.gsa.gov/app/#/gateway/information-technology/4485/mobile-device-procurement-and-management-guidance)
1336 [technology/4485/mobile-device-procurement-and-management-guidance](https://hallways.cap.gsa.gov/app/#/gateway/information-technology/4485/mobile-device-procurement-and-management-guidance).
- 1337 [52] Mobile Services Category Team (MSCT). “Mobile Device Management (MDM), MDM Working
1338 Group Document.” Aug. 2017. [Online]. Available: [https://s3.amazonaws.com/sitesusa/wp-](https://s3.amazonaws.com/sitesusa/wp-content/uploads/sites/1197/2017/10/EMM_Deliverable.pdf)
1339 [content/uploads/sites/1197/2017/10/EMM_Deliverable.pdf](https://s3.amazonaws.com/sitesusa/wp-content/uploads/sites/1197/2017/10/EMM_Deliverable.pdf).
- 1340 [53] Mobile Services Category Team (MSCT). “Mobile Services Roadmap (MSCT Strategic Approach).”
1341 Sept. 23, 2016. [Online]. Available: [https://atarc.org/project/mobile-services-roadmap-msct-](https://atarc.org/project/mobile-services-roadmap-msct-strategic-approach/)
1342 [strategic-approach/](https://atarc.org/project/mobile-services-roadmap-msct-strategic-approach/).
- 1343 [54] NIAP. U.S. Government Approved Protection Profile—Extended Package for Mobile Device
1344 Management Agents Version 2.0. Dec. 31, 2014. [Online]. Available: [https://www.niap-](https://www.niap-ccevs.org/MMO/PP/pp_mdm_agent_v2.0.pdf)
1345 [ccevs.org/MMO/PP/pp_mdm_agent_v2.0.pdf](https://www.niap-ccevs.org/MMO/PP/pp_mdm_agent_v2.0.pdf).

- 1346 [55] NIAP. Approved Protection Profiles—Protection Profile for Mobile Device Fundamentals Version
1347 3.1,. June 16, 2017. [Online]. Available: [https://www.niap-
ccevs.org/Profile/Info.cfm?PPID=417&id=417](https://www.niap-
1348 ccevs.org/Profile/Info.cfm?PPID=417&id=417).
- 1349 [56] NIAP. Approved Protection Profiles—Protection Profile for Mobile Device Management Version
1350 4.0. Apr. 25, 2019. [Online]. Available: [https://www.niap-
ccevs.org/Profile/Info.cfm?PPID=428&id=428](https://www.niap-
1351 ccevs.org/Profile/Info.cfm?PPID=428&id=428).
- 1352 [57] NIAP. Product Compliant List. [Online]. Available: <https://www.niap-ccevs.org/Product/>.
- 1353 [58] Office of Management and Budget, Category Management Policy 16-3: Improving the
1354 Acquisition and Management of Common Information Technology: Mobile Devices and Services,
1355 Aug. 4, 2016. Available:
1356 https://www.whitehouse.gov/sites/whitehouse.gov/files/omb/memoranda/2016/m_16_20.pdf.
- 1357 [59] NIST. United States Government Configuration Baseline (in development). [Online]. Available:
1358 <https://csrc.nist.gov/Projects/United-States-Government-Configuration-Baseline>.
- 1359 [60] Department of Homeland Security (DHS). “DHS S&T Study on Mobile Device Security.” Apr.
1360 2017. [Online]. Available: <https://www.dhs.gov/publication/csd-mobile-device-security-study>.
- 1361 [61] NIST, NIST Interagency Report (NISTIR) 8170, *Approaches for Federal Agencies to Use the*
1362 *Cybersecurity Framework*, Mar. 2020. [Online]. Available:
1363 <https://nvlpubs.nist.gov/nistpubs/ir/2020/NIST.IR.8170.pdf>.
- 1364 [62] NIST Privacy Framework and Cybersecurity Framework to NIST Special Publication 800-53,
1365 Revision 5 Crosswalk. [Online]. Available: [https://www.nist.gov/privacy-framework/nist-privacy-
framework-and-cybersecurity-framework-nist-special-publication-800-53](https://www.nist.gov/privacy-framework/nist-privacy-
1366 framework-and-cybersecurity-framework-nist-special-publication-800-53).

1367 Appendix D Standards and Guidance

- 1368 ▪ National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) *Framework for Improving Critical*
1369 *Infrastructure Cybersecurity (Cybersecurity Framework) Version 1.1* [1]
- 1370 ▪ *NIST Privacy Framework: A Tool for Improving Privacy Through Enterprise Risk Management,*
1371 *Version 1.0 (Privacy Framework)* [2]
- 1372 ▪ NIST Mobile Threat Catalogue [5]
- 1373 ▪ NIST Risk Management Framework [4]
- 1374 ▪ NIST Special Publication (SP) 1800-4, *Mobile Device Security: Cloud and Hybrid Builds* [7]
- 1375 ▪ NIST SP 1800-21, *Mobile Device Security: Corporate-Owned Personally-Enabled (COPE)* [36]
- 1376 ▪ NIST SP 800-30 Revision 1, *Guide for Conducting Risk Assessments* [27]
- 1377 ▪ NIST SP 800-37 Revision 2, *Risk Management Framework for Information Systems and*
1378 *Organizations: A System Life Cycle Approach for Security and Privacy* [9]
- 1379 ▪ NIST SP 800-46 Revision 2, *Guide to Enterprise Telework, Remote Access, and Bring Your Own*
1380 *Device (BYOD) Security* [31]
- 1381 ▪ NIST SP 800-52 Revision 2, *Guidelines for the Selection, Configuration, and Use of Transport*
1382 *Layer Security (TLS) Implementations* [37]
- 1383 ▪ NIST SP 800-53 Revision 4 (Final), *Security and Privacy Controls for Information Systems and*
1384 *Organizations* [29]
- 1385 ▪ NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5 (Final), *Security and Privacy Controls for Information Systems and*
1386 *Organizations* [38]
- 1387 ▪ NIST SP 800-63-3, *Digital Identity Guidelines* [33]
- 1388 ▪ NIST SP 800-113, *Guide to SSL VPNs* [39]
- 1389 ▪ NIST SP 800-114 Revision 1, *User's Guide to Telework and Bring Your Own Device (BYOD)*
1390 *Security* [40]
- 1391 ▪ NIST SP 800-124 Revision 2 (Draft), *Guidelines for Managing the Security of Mobile Devices in the*
1392 *Enterprise* [6]
- 1393 ▪ NIST SP 800-163 Revision 1, *Vetting the Security of Mobile Applications* [41]
- 1394 ▪ NIST SP 800-171 Revision 2, *Protecting Controlled Unclassified Information in Nonfederal*
1395 *Systems and Organizations* [42]
- 1396 ▪ NIST SP 800-181, *National Initiative for Cybersecurity Education (NICE) Cybersecurity Workforce*
1397 *Framework (2017)* [3]
- 1398 ▪ NIST Federal Information Processing Standards Publication (FIPS) 200, *Minimum Security*
1399 *Requirements for Federal Information and Information Systems* [28]

- 1400 ▪ NIST Privacy Risk Assessment Methodology [8]
- 1401 ▪ Center for Internet Security [43]
- 1402 ▪ Executive Office of the President, Bring Your Own Device toolkit [44]
- 1403 ▪ Federal Chief Information Officers Council and Department of Homeland Security *Mobile*
- 1404 *Security Reference Architecture, Version 1.0* [45]
- 1405 ▪ Digital Services Advisory Group and Federal Chief Information Officers Council, *Government Use*
- 1406 *of Mobile Technology Barriers, Opportunities, and Gap Analysis* [46]
- 1407 ▪ International Organization for Standardization (ISO), International Electrotechnical Commission
- 1408 (IEC) 27001:2013, “Information technology – Security techniques – Information security
- 1409 management systems – Requirements” [47]
- 1410 ▪ Mobile Computing Decision example case study [48]
- 1411 ▪ Mobile Services Category Team (MSCT) Advanced Technology Academic Research Center
- 1412 (ATARC), “Mobility Strategy Development Guidelines Working Group Document” [49]
- 1413 ▪ MSCT ATARC, “Mobile Threat Protection App Vetting and App Security,” Working Group
- 1414 Document [50]
- 1415 ▪ MSCT, “Device Procurement and Management Guidance” [51]
- 1416 ▪ MSCT, “Mobile Device Management (MDM),” MDM Working Group Document [52]
- 1417 ▪ MSCT, “Mobile Services Roadmap, MSCT Strategic Approach” [53]
- 1418 ▪ National Information Assurance Partnership (NIAP), U.S. Government Approved Protection
- 1419 Profile—Extended Package for Mobile Device Management Agents Version 2.0 [54]
- 1420 ▪ NIAP, Approved Protection Profiles—Protection Profile for Mobile Device Fundamentals Version
- 1421 3.1 [55]
- 1422 ▪ NIAP, Approved Protection Profiles—Protection Profile for Mobile Device Management Version
- 1423 4.0 [56]
- 1424 ▪ NIAP, Product Compliant List [57]
- 1425 ▪ Office of Management and Budget, *Category Management Policy 16-3: Improving the*
- 1426 *Acquisition and Management of Common Information Technology: Mobile Devices and Services*
- 1427 [58]
- 1428 ▪ United States Government Configuration Baseline [59]
- 1429 ▪ Department of Homeland Security (DHS), “DHS S&T Study on Mobile Device Security” [60]
- 1430 ▪ NIST Interagency Report (NISTIR) 8170, *Approaches for Federal Agencies to Use the*
- 1431 *Cybersecurity Framework* [61]

1432 **Appendix E Example Solution Lab Build Testing Details**

1433 This section shows the test activities performed to demonstrate how this practice guide's example
1434 solution that was built in the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) National
1435 Cybersecurity Center of Excellence (NCCoE) lab addresses the threat events and problematic data
1436 actions defined from the risk assessment.

1437 **E.1 Threat Event 1**

1438 **Summary:** Unauthorized access to sensitive information via a malicious or privacy-intrusive application
1439 is tested.

1440 **Test Activity:** Place mock sensitive enterprise contact list and calendar entries on devices, then attempt
1441 to install and use applications that access and back up those entries.

1442 **Desired Outcome:** The enterprise's security architecture would either detect or prevent use of these
1443 applications, or it would block the applications from accessing enterprise-controlled contact list and
1444 calendar entries. The enterprise's security architecture should identify presence of the applications and
1445 the fact that they access contact and calendar entries. The security architecture should block these
1446 applications from installing, block them from running, or detect their presence and cause another
1447 appropriate response, such as blocking the mobile device from accessing enterprise resources until the
1448 applications are removed.

1449 Alternatively, built-in device mechanisms such as Apple's managed applications functionality and
1450 Google's Android enterprise work profile functionality could be used to separate the contact and
1451 calendar entries associated with enterprise email accounts so that they can only be accessed by
1452 enterprise applications (applications that the enterprise mobility management (EMM) authorizes and
1453 manages), not by applications manually installed by the user. The user should not be able to manually
1454 provision their enterprise email account. Only the EMM should be able to provision the account,
1455 enabling enterprise controls on the enterprise contact list and calendar data.

1456 **Observed Outcome:** Once MaaS360 was aware that an application had access to sensitive data (e.g.,
1457 calendar entries, contacts), it applied a policy to the device and took appropriate actions automatically.
1458 MaaS360 sent an alert to the mobile device about an application compliance policy violation and
1459 requested that the user remove the application(s) within an administrator-set time frame. In our test,
1460 the simulated user account did not remove the restricted applications within the predefined time frame,
1461 and MaaS360 removed mobile device management (MDM) control from the mobile device.

1462 **E.2 Threat Event 2**

1463 **Summary:** A fictional phishing event was created to test protection against the theft of credentials
1464 through a short message service (SMS) or email phishing campaign.

1465 Test Activity:

- 1466 ▪ This threat event can be tested by establishing a web page with a form that impersonates an
1467 enterprise login prompt.
- 1468 ▪ Then send the web page's uniform resource locator (URL) via SMS or email and attempt to
1469 collect and use enterprise login credentials.

1470 **Desired Outcome:** The enterprise's security architecture should block the user from browsing to known
1471 malicious websites. Additionally, the enterprise should use multifactor authentication or phishing-
1472 resistant authentication methods such as those based on public key cryptography so that either there is
1473 no password for a malicious actor to capture or capturing the password is insufficient to obtain access to
1474 enterprise resources.

1475 **Observed Outcome:** The example solution used Palo Alto Networks' next-generation firewall. The
1476 firewall includes PAN-DB, a URL filtering service that automatically blocks known malicious URLs. The
1477 URL filtering database is updated regularly to help protect users from malicious URLs. The next-
1478 generation firewall blocked the attempt to visit the phishing site. However, if the malicious URL were
1479 not present in PAN-DB, the user would be allowed to access the website.

1480 E.3 Threat Event 3

1481 **Summary:** Testing to discover for unauthorized applications that are not present on the official Apple
1482 App Store or Google Play Store, that can be installed via URL links in SMS, email messages, or third-party
1483 websites.

1484 Test Activity (Android):

- 1485 ▪ Send an email to the user with a message urging the user to click the link to install the
1486 application.
- 1487 ▪ On the device, if not already enabled, attempt to enable the Unknown Sources toggle setting in
1488 the device security settings to allow installing applications from sources other than the Google
1489 Play Store.
- 1490 ▪ On the device, read the received email, click the link, and attempt to install the application.
- 1491 ▪ Observe whether the application could be successfully installed. If so, observe whether the
1492 enterprise detected and responded to installation of the unauthorized application.

1493 Test Activity (iOS):

- 1494 ▪ Send an email to the user with a message urging the user to click the link to install the
1495 application.
- 1496 ▪ On the device, read the received email, click the link, and attempt to install the application.

1497 **Desired Outcome:** Zimperium should alert both the administrators and user of the presence of a side-
1498 loaded application.

1499 **Observed Outcome:** Zimperium alerted both the user and MaaS360 about the presence of a side-loaded
1500 application. MaaS360 sent an email notification to the user and administrator about the presence of
1501 side-loaded applications and required actions.

1502 **E.4 Threat Event 4**

1503 **Summary:** Confidentiality and integrity loss due to exploitation of known vulnerability in the operating
1504 system or firmware.

1505 **Test Activity:** Attempt to access enterprise resources from a mobile device with known vulnerabilities
1506 (e.g., running an older, unpatched version of iOS or Android).

1507 **Desired Outcome:** The enterprise's security architecture should identify the presence of devices that are
1508 running an outdated version of iOS or Android susceptible to known vulnerabilities. It should be
1509 possible, when warranted by the risks, to block devices from accessing enterprise resources until system
1510 updates are installed.

1511 **Observed Outcome:** Zimperium was able to identify devices that were running an outdated version of
1512 iOS or Android, and it informed MaaS360 when a device was out of compliance.

1513 **E.5 Threat Event 5**

1514 **Summary:** This threat event test shows collection of location, camera, or microphone data by an
1515 application that has no need to access this data.

1516 Note: Not all applications that have access to location, camera, or microphone data are malicious.
1517 However, when applications are found collecting this information, additional vetting or testing may be
1518 required to determine the intent of its use and then to determine if the application is malicious.

1519 **Test Activity:** Upload the application to Kryptowire; observe the output report.

1520 **Desired Outcome:** Output report identifies the use of location, camera, or microphone by the
1521 application.

1522 **Observed Outcome:** The Kryptowire report identified the usage of privacy-intrusive permissions when
1523 not required.

1524 **E.6 Threat Event 6**

1525 **Summary:** Loss of confidentiality of sensitive information via eavesdropping on unencrypted device
1526 communications.

1527 **Test Activity:** Test if applications will attempt to establish a hypertext transfer protocol or unencrypted
1528 connection.

1529 **Desired Outcome:**

- 1530 ▪ Android: Because all work applications are inside a work container, a container-wide virtual
1531 private network (VPN) policy can be applied to mitigate this threat event; all communications,
1532 both encrypted and unencrypted, will be sent through the VPN tunnel. This will prevent
1533 eavesdropping on any communication originating from a work application.
- 1534 ▪ iOS: Apply a per-application VPN policy that will send all data transmitted by managed
1535 applications through the VPN tunnel. This will prevent eavesdropping on any unencrypted
1536 communication originating from work applications.
- 1537 ▪ Kryptowire can identify if an application attempts to establish an unencrypted connection.

1538 **Observed Outcome:** The Kryptowire report indicated that the application did not use in-transit data
1539 encryption.

1540 E.7 Threat Event 7

1541 **Summary:** Compromise of device integrity via observed, inferred, or brute-forced device unlock code.

1542 **Test Activity:**

- 1543 ▪ Attempt to completely remove the device unlock code. Observe whether the attempt succeeds.
- 1544 ▪ Attempt to set the device unlock code to “1234,” a weak four-digit personal identification
1545 number (PIN). Observe whether the attempt succeeds.
- 1546 ▪ Attempt to continually unlock the device, confirming that the device is factory reset after 10
1547 failed attempts.

1548 **Desired Outcome:** Policies set on the device by the EMM (MaaS360) should require a device unlock
1549 code to be set, prevent the device unlock code from being removed, require a minimum complexity for
1550 the device unlock code, and factory resetting the device after 10 failed unlock attempts.

1551 Additionally, Zimperium can identify and report devices with a disabled lock screen.

1552 **Observed Outcome:** MaaS360 applies a policy to the devices to enforce a mandatory PIN and device-
1553 wide capability. Zimperium reports devices with a disabled lock screen.

1554 E.8 Threat Event 8

1555 **Summary:** Unauthorized access to backend services via authentication or credential storage
1556 vulnerabilities in internally developed applications.

1557 **Test Activity:** Application was submitted to Kryptowire for analysis of credential weaknesses.

1558 **Desired Outcome:** Discover and report credential weaknesses.

1559 **Observed Outcome:** Kryptowire recognized within an application that the application uses hardcoded
1560 credentials. The application’s use of hardcoded credentials could introduce vulnerabilities if
1561 unauthorized entities used the hardcoded credentials to access enterprise resources.

1562 **E.9 Threat Event 9**

1563 **Summary:** Unauthorized access of enterprise resources from an unmanaged and potentially
1564 compromised device.

1565 **Test Activity:** Attempt to directly access enterprise services, e.g., Exchange email server or corporate
1566 VPN, on a mobile device that is not enrolled in the EMM system.

1567 **Desired Outcome:** Enterprise services should not be accessible from devices that are not enrolled in the
1568 EMM system. Otherwise, the enterprise is not able to effectively manage devices to prevent threats.

1569 **Observed Outcome:** Devices that were not enrolled in MaaS360 were unable to access enterprise
1570 resources as the GlobalProtect VPN gateway prevented the devices from authenticating without proper
1571 client certificates—obtainable only through enrolling in the EMM.

1572 **E.10 Threat Event 10**

1573 **Summary:** Loss of organizational data due to a lost or stolen device.

1574 **Test Activity:** Attempt to download enterprise data onto a mobile device that is not enrolled in the
1575 EMM system (may be performed in conjunction with TE-9). Attempt to remove (in conjunction with TE-
1576 7) the screen lock passcode or demonstrate that the device does not have a screen lock passcode in
1577 place. Attempt to locate and selectively wipe the device through the EMM console (will fail if the device
1578 is not enrolled in the EMM).

1579 **Desired Outcome:** It should be possible to locate or wipe EMM enrolled devices in response to a report
1580 that they have been lost or stolen. As demonstrated by TE-9, only EMM enrolled devices should be able
1581 to access enterprise resources. As demonstrated by TE-7, EMM enrolled devices can be forced to have a
1582 screen lock with a passcode of appropriate strength, which helps resist exploitation (including loss of
1583 organizational data) if the device has been lost or stolen.

1584 **Observed Outcome (Enrolled Devices):** Enrolled devices are protected. They have an enterprise policy
1585 requiring a PIN/lock screen, and therefore, the enterprise data on the device could not be accessed.
1586 After 10 attempts to access the device, the device was selectively wiped, removing all enterprise data.
1587 Additionally, the device could be remotely wiped after it was reported as lost to enterprise mobile
1588 device service management, ensuring no corporate data is left in the hands of attackers.

1589 **Observed Outcome (Unenrolled Devices):** As shown in Threat Event 9, only enrolled devices could
1590 access enterprise services. When the device attempted to access enterprise data, no connection to the
1591 enterprise services was available. Because the device cannot access the enterprise, the device would not
1592 contain enterprise information.

1593 In both outcomes, both enrolled and unenrolled, it would be at the user’s discretion if they wanted to
1594 wipe all personal data as well. Because this is a Bring Your Own Device (BYOD) scenario, only corporate
1595 data (managed applications on iOS, and the work container on Android) would be deleted from a device
1596 if the device were lost or stolen.

1597 **E.11 Threat Event 11**

1598 **Summary:** Loss of confidentiality of organizational data due to its unauthorized storage in non-
1599 organizationally managed services.

1600 **Test Activity:** Connect to the enterprise VPN. Open an enterprise website or application. Attempt to
1601 extract enterprise data by taking a screenshot, or copy/paste and send it via an unmanaged email
1602 account.

1603 **Desired Outcome:** The EMM will prohibit screenshots and other data-sharing actions while using
1604 managed applications.

1605 **Observed Outcome:** Through MaaS360 device policies, an administrator could prevent the following
1606 actions on BYODs:

1607 **Android**

- 1608 ▪ clipboard sharing
- 1609 ▪ screen capture
- 1610 ▪ share list
- 1611 ▪ backup to Google
- 1612 ▪ Secure Digital card write
- 1613 ▪ Universal Serial Bus storage
- 1614 ▪ video recording
- 1615 ▪ Bluetooth
- 1616 ▪ background data sync
- 1617 ▪ Android Beam
- 1618 ▪ Sbeam

1619

1620 **iOS**

- 1621 ▪ opening, writing, and saving from managed to unmanaged applications
- 1622 ▪ AirDrop for managed applications
- 1623 ▪ screen capture
- 1624 ▪ AirPlay
- 1625 ▪ iCloud backup
- 1626 ▪ document, photo stream, and application sync
- 1627 ▪ print
- 1628 ▪ importing files

1629 **E.12 Threat Event 12**

1630 **Summary:** Unauthorized access to work applications via bypassed lock screen (e.g., sharing the device's
1631 PIN with family members).

1632 **Test Activity:** Assume the user is an unauthorized person attempting to access enterprise resources.
1633 Unlock the device and attempt to open a work application.

1634 **Desired Outcome:** The user will be prompted to log in to the VPN using their corporate username and
1635 password. Because the user does not know this password, they are unable to log in and access
1636 corporate resources. However, if the user attempts to access a work application within the idle log-out
1637 time, they will be granted access because no password will be requested.

1638 **Observed Outcome:** GlobalProtect prompted the unauthorized user for a password. Not knowing the
1639 password, the unauthorized user was unable to access corporate resources.

1640 **E.13 Problematic Data Action 1**

1641 **Summary:** The user retains personal data and applications while access to corporate applications and
1642 data is removed.

1643 **Test Activity:** Selectively wipe a device using MaaS360.

1644 **Desired Outcome:** The user will no longer be able to access work applications and data on the device
1645 and retains all access to their personal applications and data.

1646 **Observed Outcome:** Corporate data and applications are removed while personal data is untouched.

1647 **E.14 Problematic Data Action 2**

1648 **Summary:** Collection of application and location data is restricted.

1649 **Test Activity:** Disable location and application inventory collection in MaaS360.

1650 **Desired Outcome:** The MDM does not collect an inventory of applications on the device and does not
1651 collect location information, including physical address, geographic coordinates and history, internet
1652 protocol (IP) address, and secure set identifier (SSID).

1653 **Observed Outcome:** When inspecting a device, location and application inventory information are not
1654 shown to the user, and application inventory information is not transmitted to Kryptowire.

1655 **E.15 Problematic Data Action 3**

1656 **Summary:** Access to monitoring data from the device is restricted to administrators. Application and
1657 location data are not shared with third parties that support monitoring, data analytics, and other
1658 functions for operating the BYOD solution.

1659 **Test Activity:** Attempt to log in to the MaaS360 admin portal without domain administrator permissions.

1660 **Desired Outcome:** System provides access controls to monitoring functions and logs. Data flow between
1661 the organization and third parties does not contain location information, including physical address,
1662 geographic coordinates and history, IP address, and SSID.

1663 **Observed Outcome:** Domain administrators were allowed to log in, but non-administrator users were
1664 not.

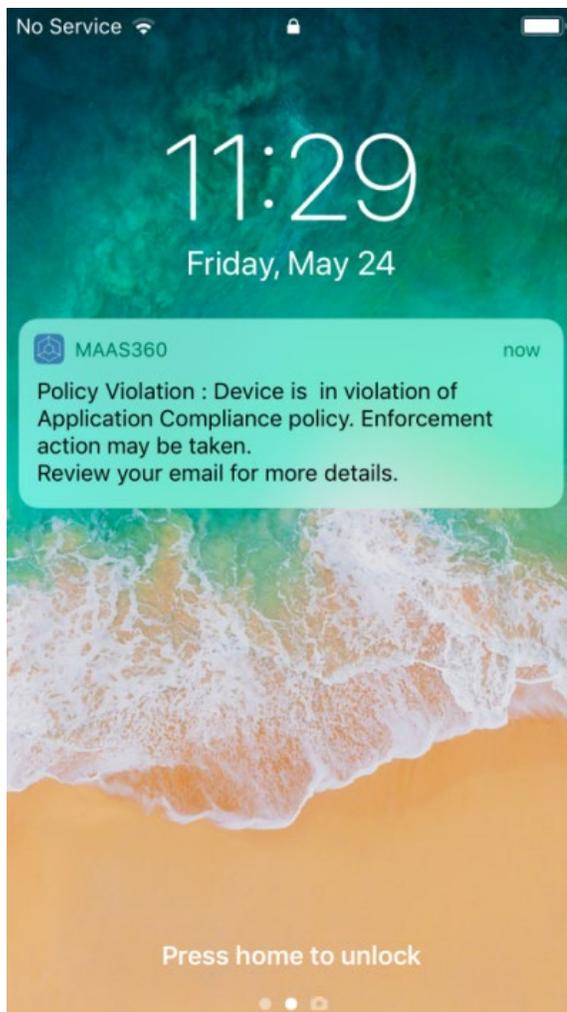
1665 **Appendix F Threat Event Test Information**

1666 Detailed information for some of this practice guide’s threat events and their testing results appears
1667 below.

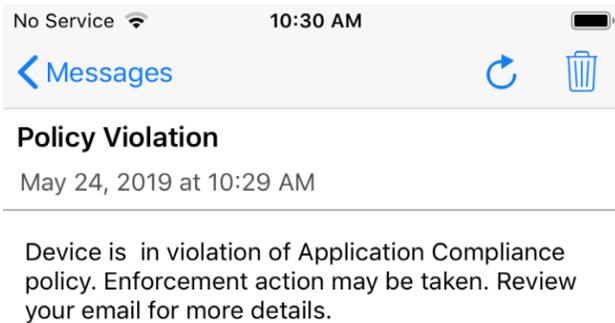
1668 **F.1 Threat Event 1**

1669 Threat Event 1 demonstrates unauthorized access attempts to sensitive information via a malicious or
1670 privacy-intrusive application. The following figures show the alerts that the device user received
1671 regarding the policy violations and their remediation actions.

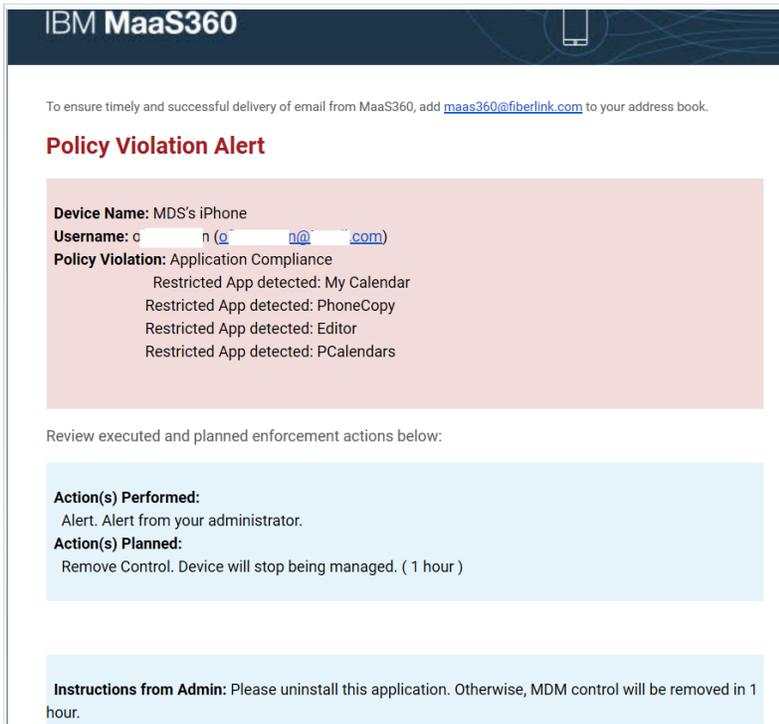
1672 **Figure F-1 Policy Violation Notification**



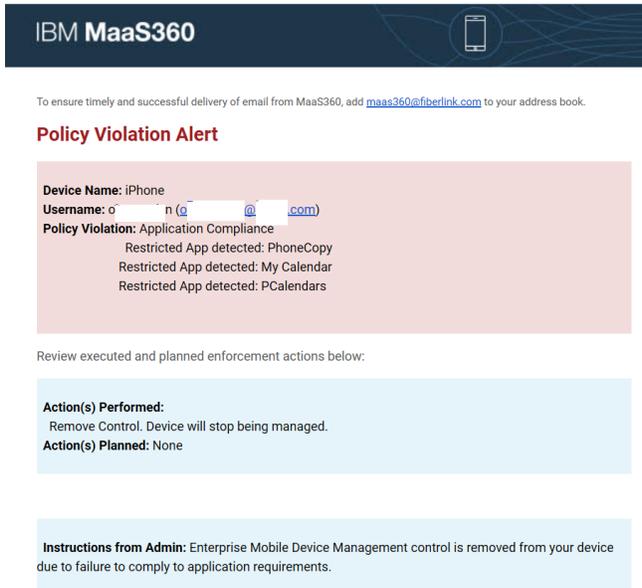
1673 **Figure F-2 Policy Violation Email**



1674 **Figure F-3 Policy Violation Alert Details Email**



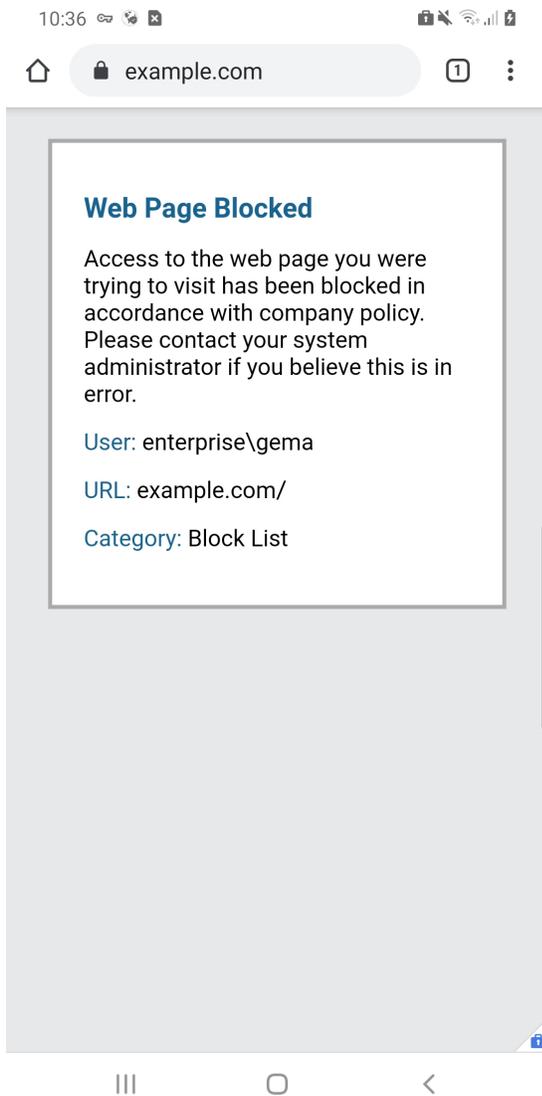
1675 **Figure F-4 Enterprise Mobility Management Removal Alert**



1676 **F.2 Threat Event 2**

1677 The following screen capture shows Threat Event 2’s testing outcome, where Palo Alto Networks’ PAN-
1678 DB is blocking a website manually added to the malicious uniform resource locator (URL) database.

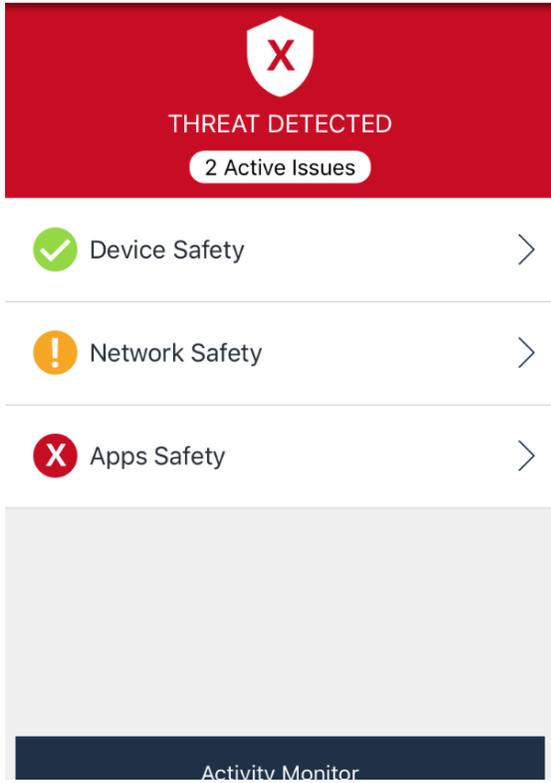
1679 **Figure F-5 PAN-DB Blocked Website**



1680 **F.3 Threat Event 3**

1681 Threat Event 3 shows applications that are not present on the official Apple App Store or Google Play
1682 Store being installed via unauthorized means (sideloading).

1683 Figure F-6 Zimperium Threat Detected



1684 Figure F-7 Zimperium Sideloaded Application Alert

THREAT DETECTED
1 Active Issue

 Apps Threats

Suspicious Apps	0	
Sideloaded Apps	1	

iPhone Distribution: >

Out of Compliance Apps	0	
------------------------	---	---

1685 Figure F-8 Zimperium Threat Log with Sideloaded Application Alert

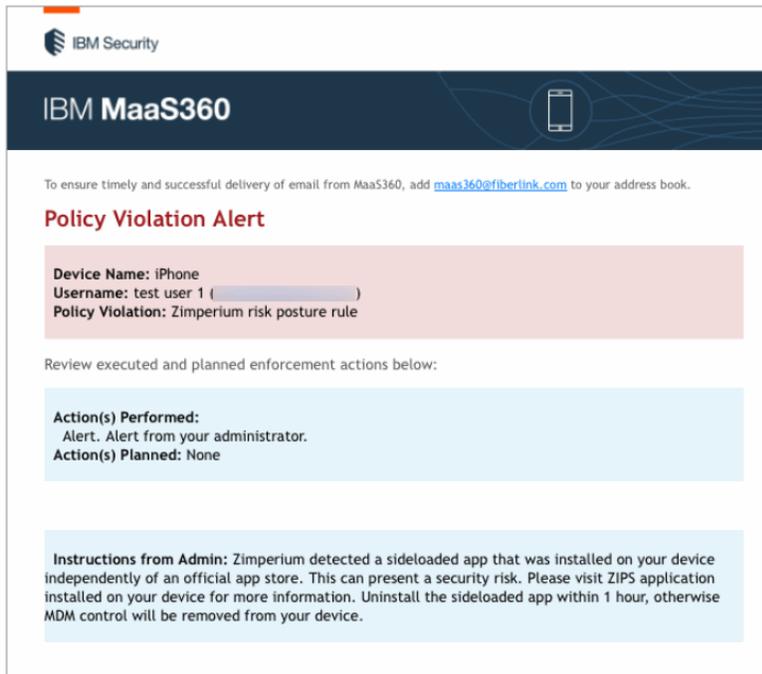
Threat Log 06/03/2019 - 06/03/2019 ▾ Export CSV 

Actions ▾ 🔄 Showing 2 of 2 Threats **0 selected** [select all 2 events](#)

<input type="checkbox"/>	Severity	Threat Na...	Labels	Group	App Name	State	Action Triggered	Timestamp
<input type="checkbox"/>	Critical	Sideloaded App(t	No info	IBM MaaS360 - All Devic	zIPS	Pending	No info	06/03/2019 - 16:21
<input type="checkbox"/>	Elevated	Unsecured WiFi I	No info	IBM MaaS360 - All Devic	zIPS	Pending	No info	06/03/2019 - 16:11

1 - 2 of 2 

1686 Figure F-9 Email Regarding MaaS360 Policy Violation Alert



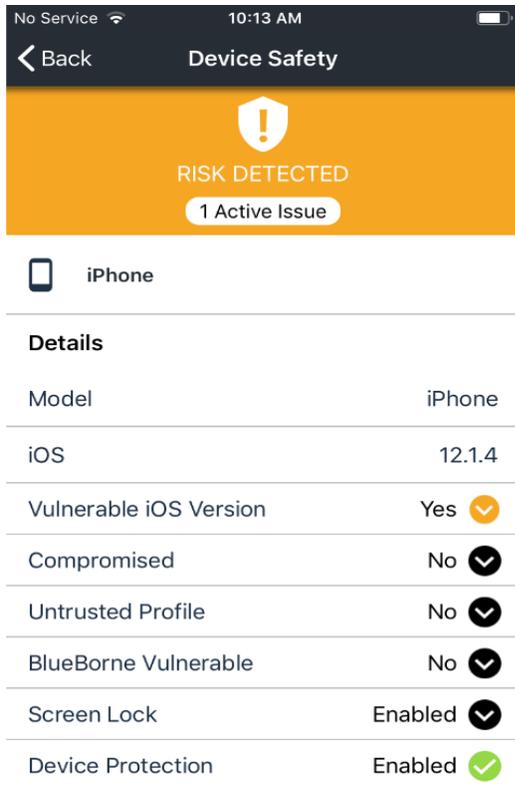
1687 **F.4 Threat Event 4**

1688 Threat Event 4 shows a risk detection during an operating system rules compliance status check.

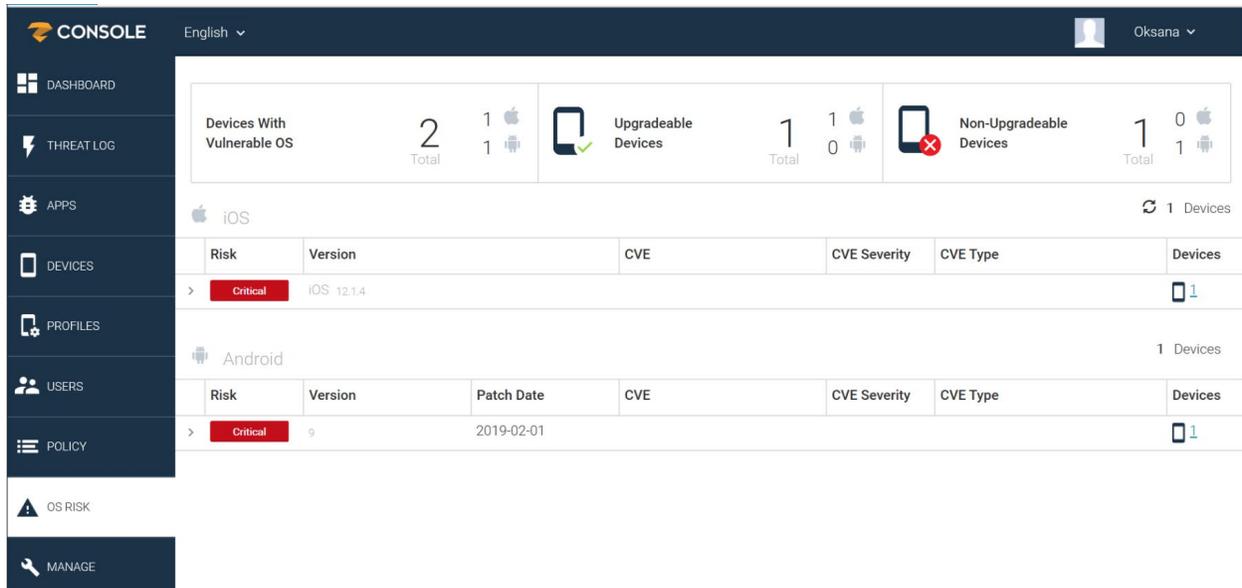
1689 Figure F-10 MaaS360 Policy Violation Alert



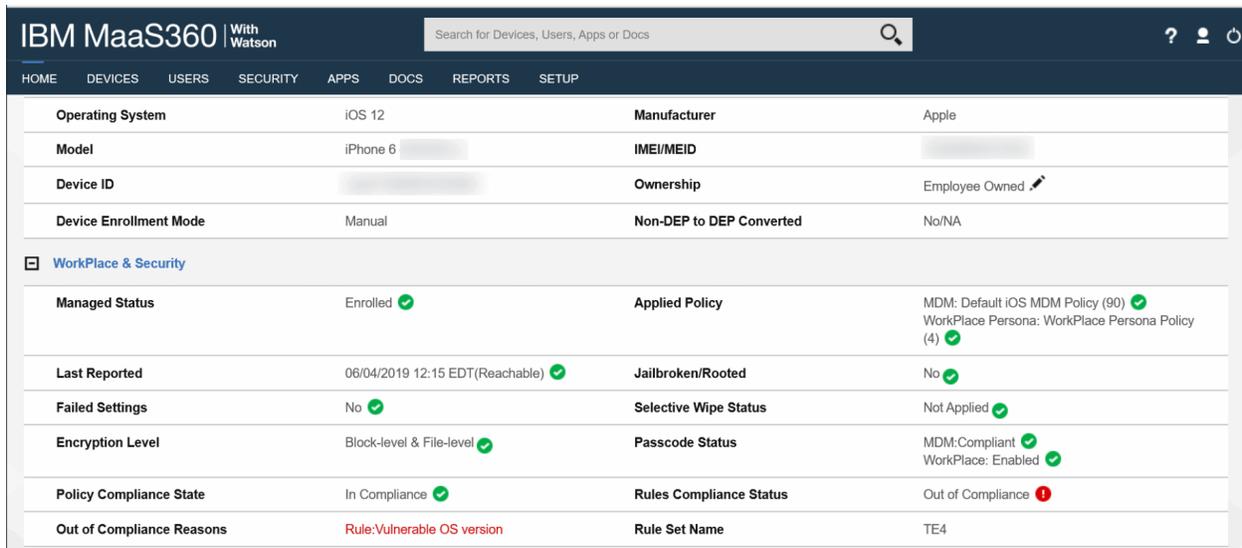
1690 Figure F-11 Zimperium Risk Detected



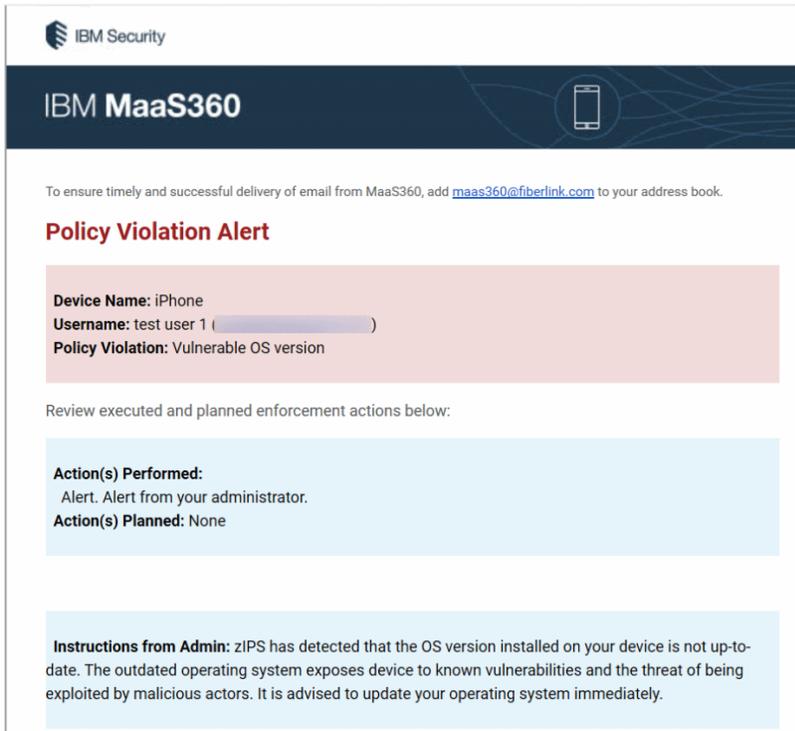
1691 Figure F-12 Zimperium OS Risk



1692 Figure F-13 MaaS360 Compliance Rule Violation



1693 Figure F-14 MaaS360 Policy Violation Email



1694 **F.5 Threat Event 5**

1695 Threat Event 5 demonstrates a report detailing collection of information such as location, camera, or
1696 microphone data by an application.

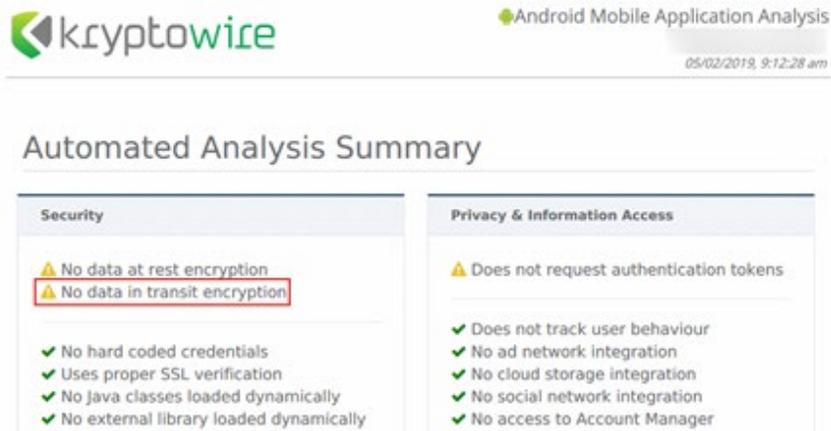
1697 Figure F-15 Kryptowire iOS Application Report



1698 **F.6 Threat Event 6**

1699 Threat Event 6 demonstrates a report of an application that can lose confidentiality of sensitive
1700 information via eavesdropping on unencrypted device communications.

1701 Figure F-16 Kryptowire Android Application Report



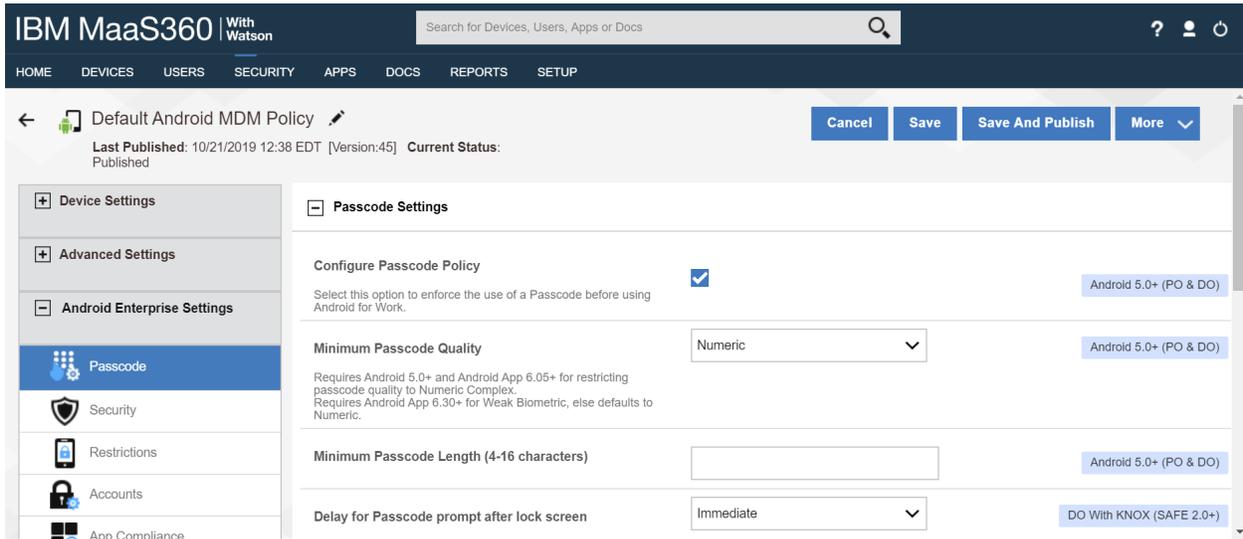
1702 **F.7 Threat Event 7**

1703 Two scenarios are shown for Threat Event 7:

- 1704 ▪ The first scenario shows MaaS360 applying a policy to the devices to enforce a mandatory PIN
- 1705 and device-wipe capability.
- 1706 ▪ The second scenario shows Zimperium reporting a disabled lock screen.

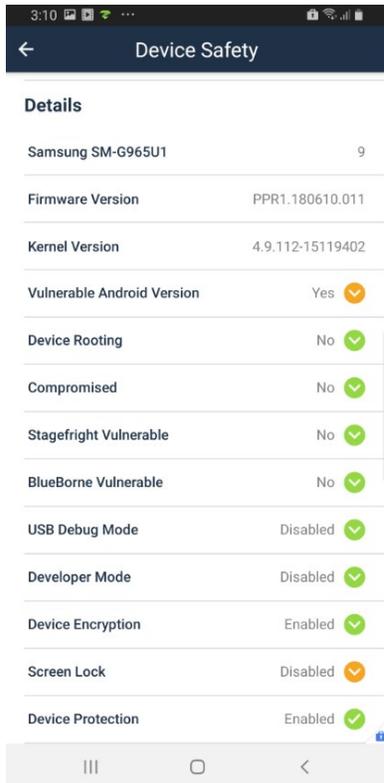
1707 The diagram shows the MaaS360 configuration requirements for Passcode Settings for its managed
1708 devices, including a mandatory PIN configuration.

1709 **Figure F-17 MaaS360 Applying Mandatory PIN Policy**



1710 The figure shows Zimperium reporting discovery of a disabled lock screen.

1711 **Figure F-18 Zimperium Reporting Devices with a Disabled Lock Screen**



1712 **F.8 Threat Event 8**

1713 Threat Event 8 testing images show a report that detected unauthorized access to backend services via
1714 authentication or credential storage vulnerabilities in internally developed applications.

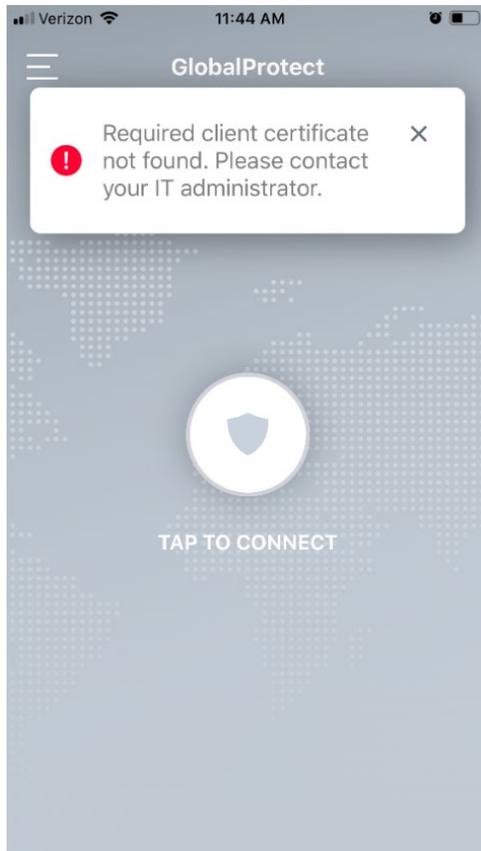
1715 Figure F-19 Application Report with Hardcoded Credentials



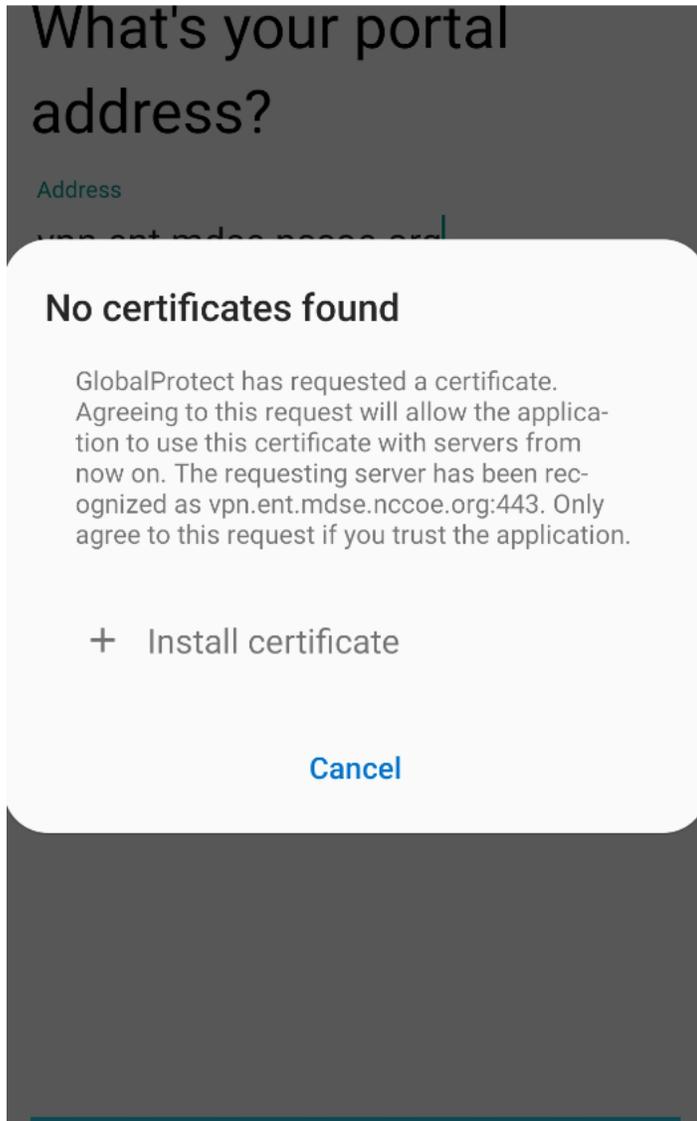
1716 **F.9 Threat Event 9**

1717 Threat Event 9 shows an unsuccessful attempt to access enterprise resources from an unmanaged and
1718 potentially compromised device.

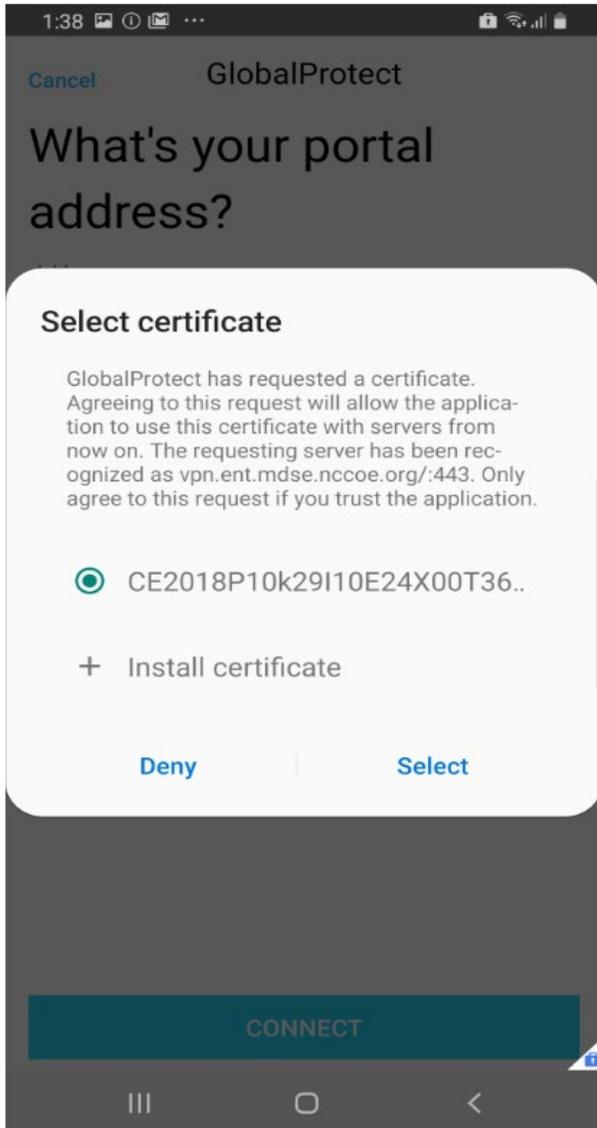
1719 Figure F-20 Attempting to Access the Virtual Private Network (VPN) on an Unmanaged Device



1720 Figure F-21 Android: Attempting to Access the VPN on an Unmanaged Device



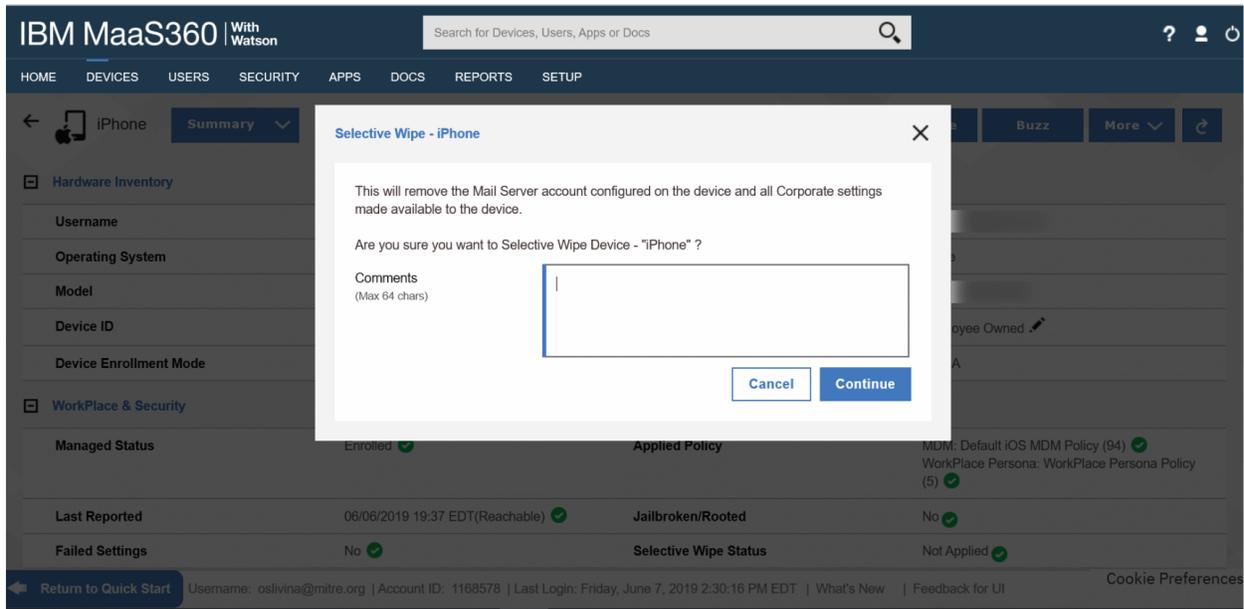
1721 Figure F-22 Android: Attempting to Access the VPN on a Managed Device



1722 **F.10 Threat Event 10**

1723 These screen captures show selectively wiping the device to remove organizational data. This prevents
1724 the loss of organizational data due to a lost or stolen device.

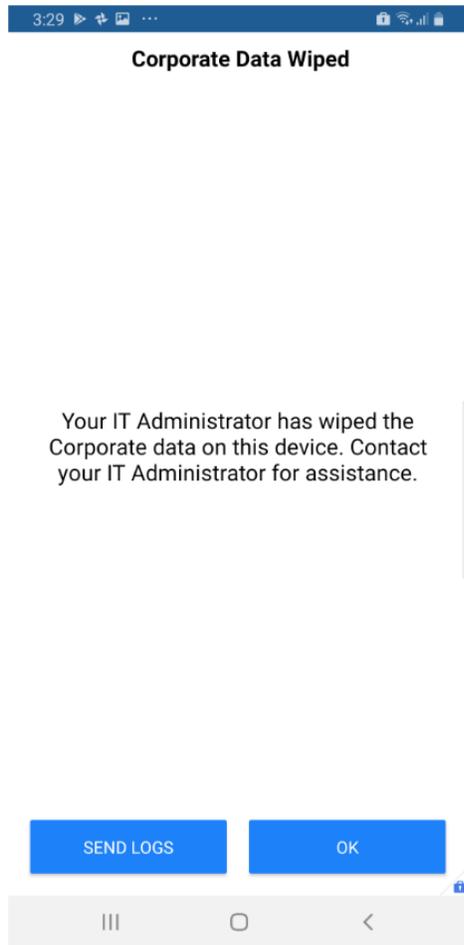
1725 Figure F-23 Selectively Wiping an iOS Device



1726 Figure F-24 Selective-Wipe Completed

IBM MaaS360 With Watson			
Search for Devices, Users, Apps or Docs			
HOME DEVICES USERS SECURITY APPS DOCS REPORTS SETUP			
Last Reported	06/07/2019 13:36 EDT ✓	Android Blocked Permissions	Camera (Core) Usage Access (Core) Location (Core)
Jailbroken/Rooted	No ✓	Google Device Attestation Failed	No ✓
Samsung Device Attestation Failed	-	Last Device Attestation Result	06/06/2019 16:23 EDT ✓
Factory Reset Protection	Not Supported	Failed Settings	No ✓
Selective Wipe Status	Completed (06/07/2019 15:27 EDT) !	Encryption Level	Encryption Complete ✓
Passcode Status	MDM:Compliant ✓ WorkPlace: Not Enabled !	Policy Compliance State	In Compliance ✓
Rules Compliance Status	In Compliance ✓	Out of Compliance Reasons	-
Rule Set Name	TE7	Kiosk Mode	Not Applicable
Usage Policy	-		
Network Information			
Phone Number	- ✎	ICCID	-
Is Roaming	Not Enabled	International Data Roaming	Not Enabled

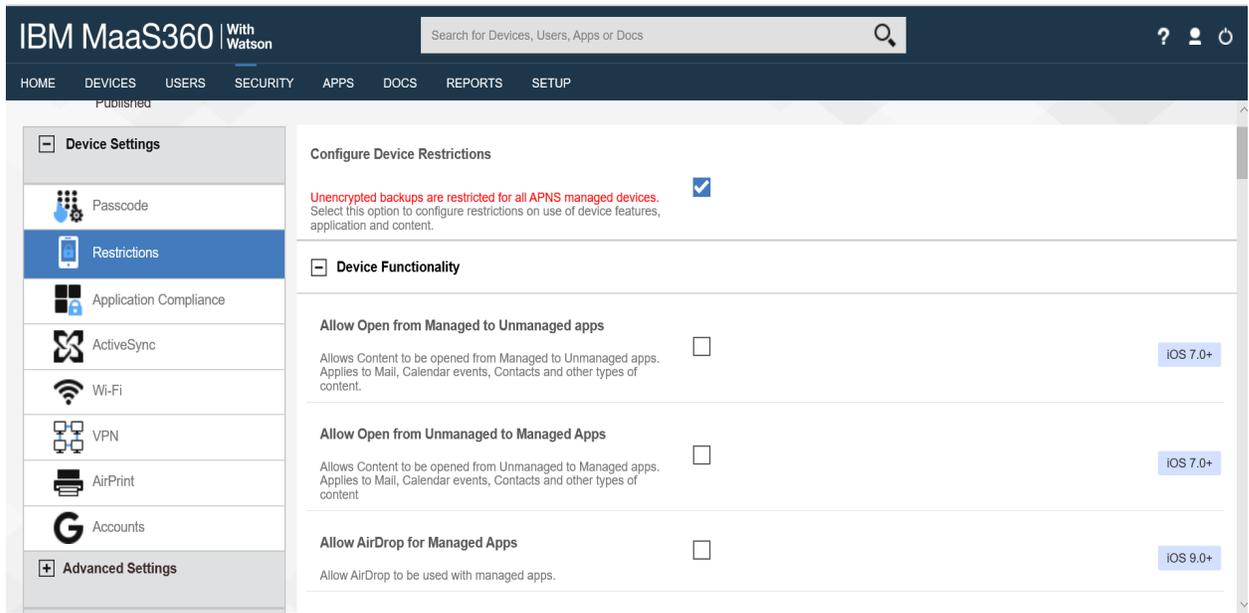
1727 **Figure F-25 No Corporate Data Left on Device**



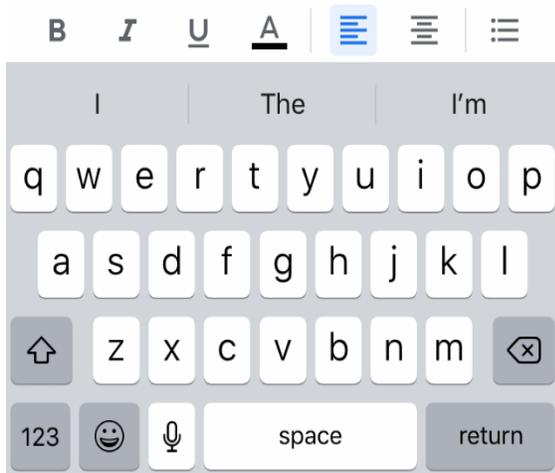
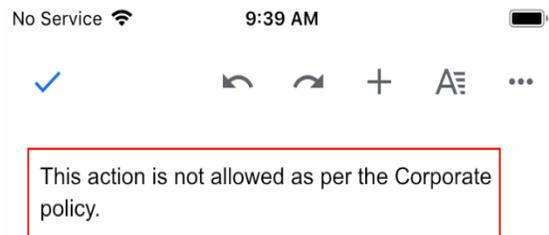
1728 **F.11 Threat Event 11**

1729 These images show an example configuration and outcome to prevent data from being pasted from one
1730 application to another application.

1731 Figure F-26 MaaS360 DLP Configuration



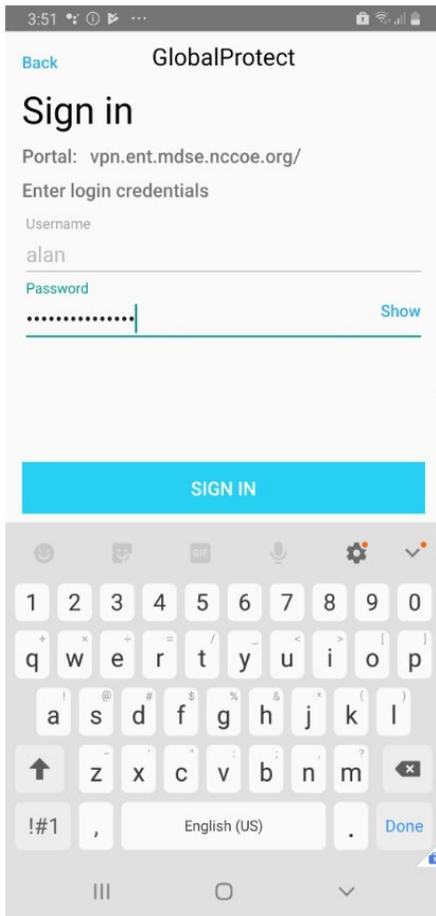
1732 **Figure F-27 Attempting to Paste Text on iOS**



1733 **F.12 Threat Event 12**

1734 This image shows a required password to prevent unauthorized access to work applications via a
1735 bypassed lock screen. If the lock screen is bypassed, individuals would not be able to connect to the VPN
1736 without knowing the user's domain password.

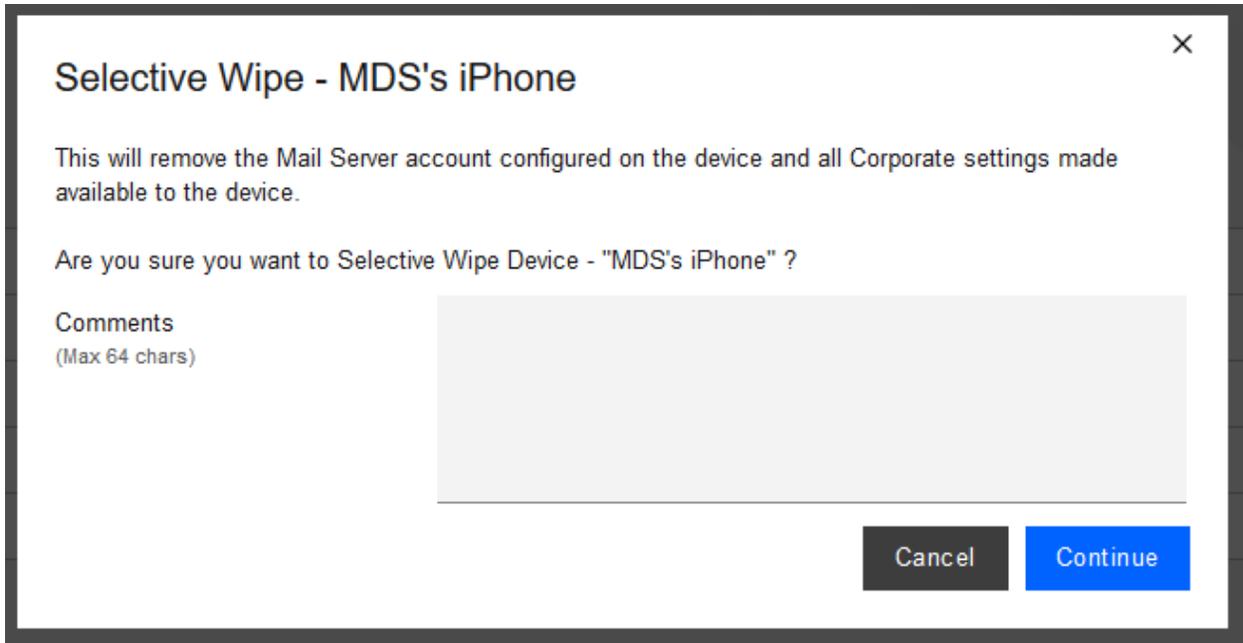
1737 **Figure F-28 GlobalProtect Requires the User’s Password**



1738 **F.13 Problematic Data Action 1**

1739 This image shows initiation of a selective wipe. The selective wipe will remove the Mail Server account
1740 and all corporate settings available to the device.

1741 Figure F-29 Initiating a Selective Wipe



1742 **F.14 Problematic Data Action 2**

1743 This shows inventory information for applications and the location information restriction.

1744 Figure F-30 Application Inventory Information

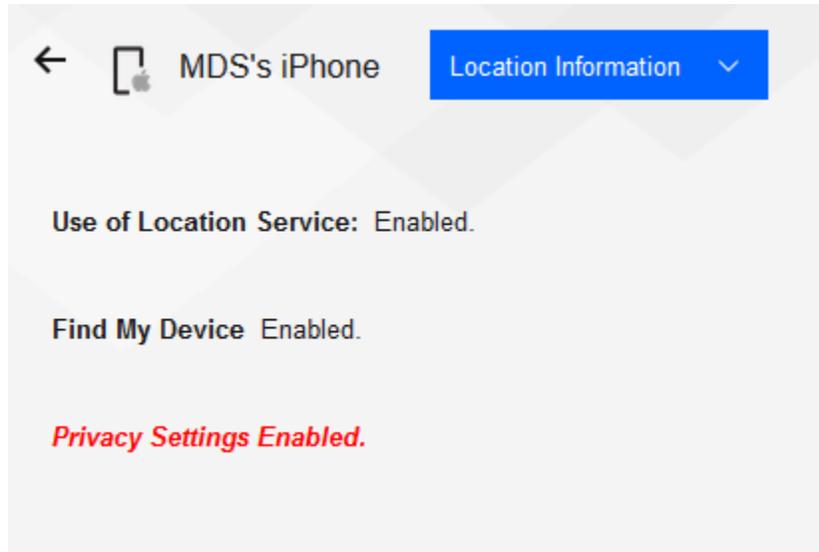
Application...	App ID	Full Version	Application...	Data Size (...)	Managed	App Source	Complianc...	Action	View Security...
GlobalProtect	com.paloaltonet works.globalprot ect.vpn	5.1.1	8.46	0.77	Installed by MDM	iTunes	Required	Remove App	Security Details
MaaS360	com.fiberlink.ma as360forios	3.97.36	147.02	2.99	Installed by MDM	iTunes	Required	Remove App	Security Details
MaaS360 VPN	com.fiberlink.ma as360.maas360v pn	3.20.50	7.53	0.02	Installed by MDM	iTunes	Required	Remove App	Security Details
zIPS	com.zimperium. ziPS.appstore	4.12.0	36.94	0.05	Installed by MDM	iTunes	Required	Remove App	Security Details

Displaying 1 - 4 of 4 Records

CSV Export

1745 When privacy restrictions are configured, only corporate application inventory information is collected.

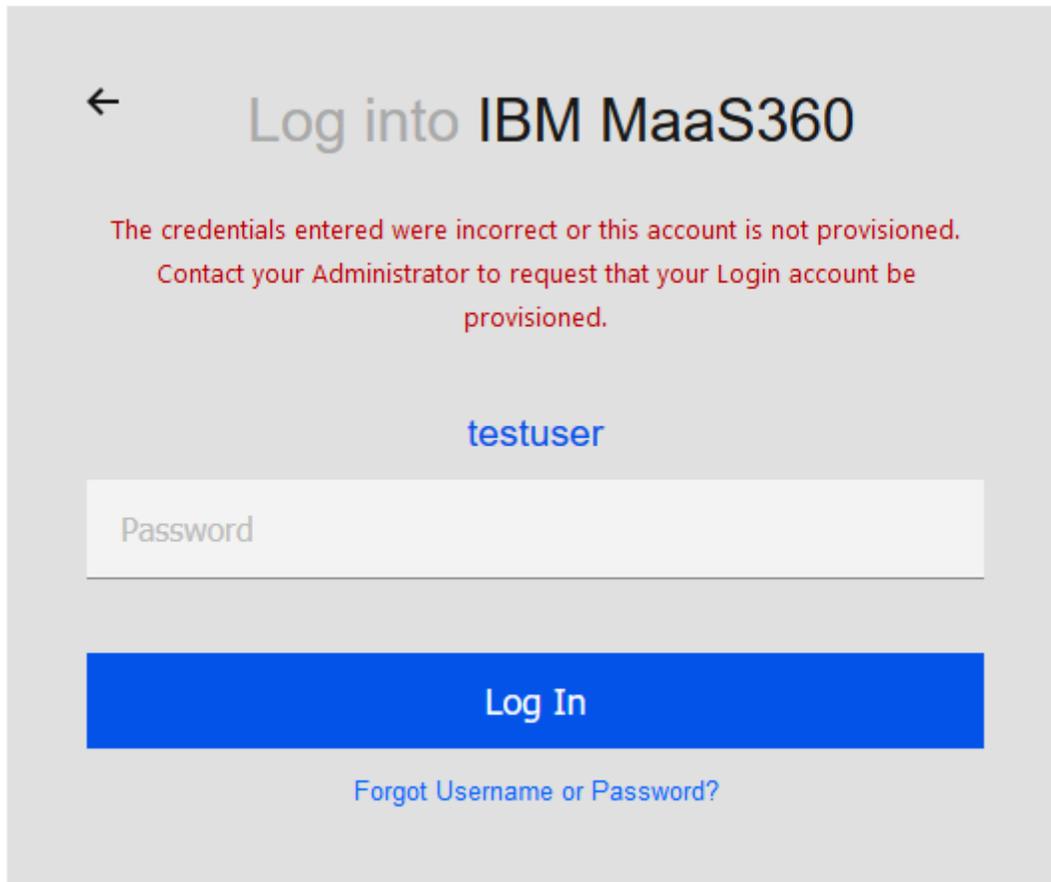
1746 Figure F-31 Location Information Restricted



1747 **F.15 Problematic Data Action 3**

1748 This demonstrates how a non-administrator account will be prevented from logging in to the MaaS360
1749 portal.

1750 Figure F-32 Non-Administrator Failed Portal Login



1751 **Appendix G Example Security Subcategory and Control Map**

1752 Using the developed risk information as input, the security characteristics of the example solution were identified. A security
 1753 control map was developed documenting the example solution’s capabilities with applicable Subcategories from the National
 1754 Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) *Framework for Improving Critical Infrastructure Cybersecurity*, Version 1.1
 1755 (Cybersecurity Framework) [1]; NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-53 Revision 5, *Security and Privacy Controls for Information
 1756 Systems and Organizations* [38]; International Organization for Standardization (ISO); International Electrotechnical Commission
 1757 (IEC) 27001:2013 *Information technology – Security techniques – Information security management systems – Requirements*
 1758 [47]; the Center for Internet Security’s (CIS) control set Version 6 [43]; and NIST SP 800-181, *National Initiative for Cybersecurity
 1759 Education (NICE) Cybersecurity Workforce Framework (Work Roles from 2017 version)* [3].

1760 Table G-1’s example security control map identifies the security characteristic standards mapping for the products as they were
 1761 used in the example solution. The products may have additional capabilities that we did not use in this example solution. For
 1762 that reason, it is recommended that the mapping not be used as a reference for all of the security capabilities these products
 1763 may be able to address.

1764 **Table G-1 Example Solution’s Cybersecurity Standards and Best Practices Mapping**

Specific product used	How the component functions in the example solution	Applicable NIST Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories	Applicable NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5 Controls	ISO/IEC 27001:2013	CIS 6	Applicable NIST SP 800-181 NICE Framework Work Roles (2017)
Mobile Threat Defense						
Kryptowire Cloud Service	Application Vetting	ID.RA-1: Asset vulnerabilities are identified and documented.	CA-2, CA-7, CA-8: Security Assessment and Authorization RA-3, RA-5: Risk Assessment SA-4: Acquisition Process	A.12.6.1: Control of technical vulnerabilities A.18.2.3: Technical Compliance Review	CSC 4: Continuous Vulnerability Assessment and Remediation	SP-RSK-002: Security Control Assessor SP-ARC-002: Security Architect OM-ANA-001: Systems Security Analyst

Specific product used	How the component functions in the example solution	Applicable NIST Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories	Applicable NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5 Controls	ISO/IEC 27001:2013	CIS 6	Applicable NIST SP 800-181 NICE Framework Work Roles (2017)
			<p>SI-7: Software, Firmware, and Information Integrity</p>			
		<p>ID.RA-3: Threats, both internal and external, are identified and documented.</p>	<p>RA-3: Risk Assessment</p> <p>SI-7: Software, Firmware, and Information Integrity</p> <p>PM-12, PM-16: Insider Threat Program</p>	<p>6.1.2: Information risk assessment process</p>	<p>CSC 4: Continuous Vulnerability Assessment and Remediation</p>	<p>SP-RSK-002: Security Control Assessor</p> <p>OM-ANA-001: Systems Security Analyst</p> <p>OV-SPP-001: Cyber Workforce Developer and Manager</p> <p>OV-TEA-001: Cyber Instructional Curriculum Developer</p> <p>PR-VAM-001: Vulnerability Assessment Analyst</p>

Specific product used	How the component functions in the example solution	Applicable NIST Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories	Applicable NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5 Controls	ISO/IEC 27001:2013	CIS 6	Applicable NIST SP 800-181 NICE Framework Work Roles (2017)
						PR-VAM-001: Vulnerability Assessment Analyst
		DE.CM-4: Malicious code is detected.	SI-7: Software, Firmware, and Information Integrity	A.12.2.1: Controls Against Malware	CSC 4: Continuous Vulnerability Assessment and Remediation CSC 7: Email and Web Browser Protections CSC 8: Malware Defenses CSC 12: Boundary Defense	PR-CIR-001: Cyber Defense Incident Responder PR-CDA-001: Cyber Defense Analyst
		DE.CM-5: Unauthorized mobile code is detected.	SC-18: Mobile Code SI-7: Software, Firmware, and	A.12.5.1: Installation of Software on Operational Systems	CSC 7: Email and Web Browser Protections	PR-CDA-001: Cyber Defense Analyst

Specific product used	How the component functions in the example solution	Applicable NIST Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories	Applicable NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5 Controls	ISO/IEC 27001:2013	CIS 6	Applicable NIST SP 800-181 NICE Framework Work Roles (2017)
			Information Integrity	A.12.6.2: Restrictions on Software Installation	CSC 8: Malware Defenses	SP-DEV-002: Secure Software Assessor
Zimperium Console version vGA-4.23.1	Cloud service that complements the zIPS Agent	ID.AM-1: Physical devices and systems within the organization are inventoried.	CM-8: Information System Component Inventory PM-5: Information System Inventory	A.8.1.1: Inventory of Assets A.8.1.2: Ownership of Assets	CSC 1: Inventory of Authorized and Unauthorized Devices	OM-STS-001: Technical Support Specialist OM-NET-001: Network Operations Specialist OM-ADM-001: System Administrator

Specific product used	How the component functions in the example solution	Applicable NIST Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories	Applicable NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5 Controls	ISO/IEC 27001:2013	CIS 6	Applicable NIST SP 800-181 NICE Framework Work Roles (2017)
<p>zIPS agent Version 4.9.2 (iOS), 4.9.2 (Android)</p>	<p>Endpoint security for mobile device threats</p>	<p>ID.AM-2: Software platforms and applications within the organization are inventoried.</p>	<p>CM-8: Information System Component Inventory</p> <p>PM-5: Information System Inventory</p>	<p>A.8.1.1: Inventory of Assets</p> <p>A.8.1.2: Ownership of Assets</p> <p>A.12.5.1: Installation of Software on Operational Systems</p>	<p>CSC 2: Inventory of Authorized and Unauthorized Software</p>	<p>SP-DEV-002: Secure Software Assessor</p> <p>SP-DEV-001: Software Developer</p> <p>SP-TRD-001: Research and Development Specialist</p>
		<p>DE.CM-8: Vulnerability scans are performed.</p>	<p>RA-5: Vulnerability Monitoring and Scanning</p>	<p>A.12.6.1: Management of technical vulnerabilities</p>	<p>CSC 4: Continuous Vulnerability Assessment and Remediation</p> <p>CSC 20: Penetration Tests and Red Team Exercises</p>	<p>PR-VAM-001: Vulnerability Assessment Analyst</p> <p>PR-INF-001: Cyber Defense Infrastructure Support Specialist</p> <p>PR-CDA-001: Cyber Defense Analyst</p>

Specific product used	How the component functions in the example solution	Applicable NIST Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories	Applicable NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5 Controls	ISO/IEC 27001:2013	CIS 6	Applicable NIST SP 800-181 NICE Framework Work Roles (2017)
		DE.AE-5: Incident alert thresholds are established.	IR-4: Incident Handling IR-5: Incident Monitoring IR-8: Incident Response Plan	A.16.1.4: Assessment of and decision on information security events	CSC 6: Maintenance, Monitoring, and Analysis of Audit Logs CSC 19: Incident Response and Management	PR-CIR-001: Cyber Defense Incident Responder AN-TWA-001: Threat/Warning Analyst
		DE.CM-5: Unauthorized mobile code is detected.	SC-18: Mobile Code SI-7: Software, Firmware, and Information Integrity	A.12.5.1: Installation of Software on Operational Systems A.12.6.2: Restrictions on Software Installation	CSC 7: Email and Web Browser Protections CSC 8: Malware Defenses	PR-CDA-001: Cyber Defense Analyst SP-DEV-002: Secure Software Assessor
Enterprise Mobility Management						
IBM MaaS360 Mobile Device Management (SaaS)	Enforces organizational mobile endpoint security policy	ID.AM-1: Physical devices and systems within the organization are inventoried.	CM-8: System Component Inventory PM-5: System Inventory	A.8.1.1: Inventory of Assets A.8.1.2: Ownership of Assets	CSC 1: Inventory of Authorized and Unauthorized Devices	OM-STS-001: Technical Support Specialist OM-NET-001: Network Operations Specialist

Specific product used	How the component functions in the example solution	Applicable NIST Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories	Applicable NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5 Controls	ISO/IEC 27001:2013	CIS 6	Applicable NIST SP 800-181 NICE Framework Work Roles (2017)
Version 10.73						OM-ADM-001: System Administrator
		ID.AM-2: Software platforms and applications within the organization are inventoried.	CM-8: System Component Inventory PM-5: System Inventory	A.8.1.1: Inventory of Assets A.8.1.2: Ownership of Assets A.12.5.1: Installation of Software on Operational Systems	CSC 2: Inventory of Authorized and Unauthorized Software	SP-DEV-002: Secure Software Assessor SP-DEV-001: Software Developer SP-TRD-001: Research and Development Specialist

Specific product used	How the component functions in the example solution	Applicable NIST Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories	Applicable NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5 Controls	ISO/IEC 27001:2013	CIS 6	Applicable NIST SP 800-181 NICE Framework Work Roles (2017)
		<p>PR.AC-1: Identities and credentials are issued, managed, verified, revoked, and audited for authorized devices, users, and processes.</p>	<p>AC-3: Access Enforcement</p> <p>IA-1, IA-2, IA-3, IA-4, IA-5, IA-6, IA-7, IA-8, IA-9, IA-10, IA-11: Identification and Authentication Family</p>	<p>A.9.2.1: User Registration and De-Registration</p> <p>A.9.2.2: User Access Provisioning</p> <p>A.9.2.3: Management of Privileged Access Rights</p> <p>A.9.2.4: Management of Secret Authentication Information of Users</p> <p>A.9.2.6: Removal or Adjustment of Access Rights</p> <p>A.9.3.1: Use of Secret Authentication Information</p>	<p>CSC 1: Inventory of Authorized and Unauthorized Devices</p> <p>CSC 5: Controlled Use of Administrative Privileges</p> <p>CSC 15: Wireless Access Control</p> <p>CSC 16: Account Monitoring and Control</p>	<p>OV-SPP-002: Cyber Policy and Strategy Planner</p> <p>OM-ADM-001: System Administrator</p> <p>OV-MGT-002: Communications Security (COMSEC) Manager</p>

Specific product used	How the component functions in the example solution	Applicable NIST Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories	Applicable NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5 Controls	ISO/IEC 27001:2013	CIS 6	Applicable NIST SP 800-181 NICE Framework Work Roles (2017)
				<p>A.9.4.2: Secure logon Procedures</p> <p>A.9.4.3: Password Management System</p>		

Specific product used	How the component functions in the example solution	Applicable NIST Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories	Applicable NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5 Controls	ISO/IEC 27001:2013	CIS 6	Applicable NIST SP 800-181 NICE Framework Work Roles (2017)
		<p>PR.AC-3: Remote access is managed.</p>	<p>AC-1: Access Control Policy and Procedures</p> <p>AC-17: Remote Access</p> <p>AC-19: Access Control for Mobile Devices</p> <p>AC-20: Use of External Systems</p> <p>SC-15: Collaborative Computing Devices and Applications</p>	<p>A.6.2.1: Mobile Device Policy</p> <p>A.6.2.2: Teleworking</p> <p>A.11.2.6: Security of equipment and assets off premises</p> <p>A.13.1.1: Network Controls</p> <p>A.13.2.1: Information Transfer Policies and Procedures</p>	<p>CSC 12: Boundary Defense</p>	<p>OV-SPP-002: Cyber Policy and Strategy Planner</p> <p>OV-MGT-002: Communications Security (COMSEC) Manager</p>
		<p>PR.AC-6: Identities are proofed and bound to credentials and asserted in interactions.</p>	<p>AC-1, AC-3: Access Control Policy and Procedures</p> <p>IA-2, IA-4, IA-5: Identification</p>	<p>A.7.1.1: Screening</p> <p>A.9.2.1: User Registration and De-Registration</p>	<p>CSC 16: Account Monitoring and Control</p>	<p>OV-SPP-002: Cyber Policy and Strategy Planner</p> <p>OV-MGT-002: Communications Security</p>

Specific product used	How the component functions in the example solution	Applicable NIST Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories	Applicable NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5 Controls	ISO/IEC 27001:2013	CIS 6	Applicable NIST SP 800-181 NICE Framework Work Roles (2017)
			<p>and Authentica- tion</p> <p>PE-2: Physical Access Authori- zations</p>			<p>(COMSEC) Man- ager</p>
		<p>PR.IP-1: A baseline configuration of information technology/industrial control systems is created and maintained, incorporating security principles (e.g., concept of least functionality).</p>	<p>CM-8: System Component In- ventory</p> <p>SA-10: Devel- oper Configura- tion Manage- ment</p>	<p>A.12.1.2: Change Management</p> <p>A.12.5.1: Installa- tion of Software on Operational Systems</p> <p>A.12.6.2: Re- strictions on Soft- ware Installation</p> <p>A.14.2.2: System Change Control Procedures</p> <p>A.14.2.3: Tech- nical Review of Applications After Operating Plat- form Changes</p>	<p>CSC 3: Secure Configurations for Hardware and Software on Mobile De- vices, Laptops, Workstations, and Servers</p> <p>CSC 9: Limita- tion and Control of Network Ports, Proto- cols, and Ser- vices</p> <p>CSC 11: Secure Configurations for Network Devices such as</p>	<p>SP-ARC-002: Security Archi- tect</p> <p>OV-SPP-002: Cyber Policy and Strategy Planner</p> <p>SP-SYS-001: Information Sys- tems Security Developer</p> <p>OM-ADM-001: System Adminis- trator</p> <p>PR-VAM-001: Vulnerability As- sessment Ana- lyst</p>

Specific product used	How the component functions in the example solution	Applicable NIST Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories	Applicable NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5 Controls	ISO/IEC 27001:2013	CIS 6	Applicable NIST SP 800-181 NICE Framework Work Roles (2017)
				<p>A.14.2.4: Restrictions on Changes to Software Packages</p>	<p>Firewalls, Routers, and Switches</p>	

Specific product used	How the component functions in the example solution	Applicable NIST Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories	Applicable NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5 Controls	ISO/IEC 27001:2013	CIS 6	Applicable NIST SP 800-181 NICE Framework Work Roles (2017)
<p>IBM MaaS360 Mobile Device Management Agent Version 3.91.5 (iOS), 6.60 (Android)</p>	<p>Endpoint software that complements IBM MaaS360 Mobile Device Management console—provides root/jail-break detection and other functions</p>	<p>PR.DS-6: Integrity checking mechanisms are used to verify software, firmware, and information integrity.</p>	<p>SC-16: Transmission of Security and Privacy Attributes</p> <p>SI-7: Software, Firmware, and Information Integrity</p>	<p>A.12.2.1: Controls Against Malware</p> <p>A.12.5.1: Installation of Software on Operational Systems</p> <p>A.14.1.2: Securing Application Services on Public Networks</p> <p>A.14.1.3: Protecting Application Services Transactions</p> <p>A.14.2.4: Restrictions on Changes to Software Packages</p>	<p>CSC 2: Inventory of Authorized and Unauthorized Software</p> <p>CSC 3: Secure Configurations for Hardware and Software on Mobile Devices, Laptops, Workstations, and Servers</p>	<p>OV-SPP-002: Cyber Policy and Strategy Planner</p> <p>SP-ARC-001: Enterprise Architect</p>

Specific product used	How the component functions in the example solution	Applicable NIST Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories	Applicable NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5 Controls	ISO/IEC 27001:2013	CIS 6	Applicable NIST SP 800-181 NICE Framework Work Roles (2017)
Trusted Execution Environment						
<p>Qualcomm (version is mobile device dependent)</p>	<p>Secure boot and image integrity</p>	<p>PR.DS-1: Data-at-rest is protected.</p>	<p>SC-28: Protection of Information at Rest</p>	<p>A.8.2.3: Handling of Assets</p>	<p>CSC 13: Data Protection</p> <p>CSC 14: Controlled Access Based on the Need to Know</p>	<p>OV-SPP-002: Cyber Policy and Strategy Planner</p> <p>PR-INF-001: Cyber Defense Infrastructure Support Specialist</p> <p>OV-LGA-002: Privacy Officer/Privacy Compliance Manager</p> <p>OV-MGT-002: Communications Security (COMSEC) Manager</p>

Specific product used	How the component functions in the example solution	Applicable NIST Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories	Applicable NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5 Controls	ISO/IEC 27001:2013	CIS 6	Applicable NIST SP 800-181 NICE Framework Work Roles (2017)
		<p>PR.DS-6: Integrity checking mechanisms are used to verify software, firmware, and information integrity.</p>	<p>SA-10(1): Developer Configuration Management</p> <p>SI-7: Software, Firmware, and Information Integrity</p>	<p>A.12.2.1: Controls Against Malware</p> <p>A.12.5.1: Installation of Software on Operational Systems</p> <p>A.14.1.2: Securing Application Services on Public Networks</p> <p>A.14.1.3: Protecting Application Services Transactions</p> <p>A.14.2.4: Restrictions on Changes to Software Packages</p>	<p>CSC 2: Inventory of Authorized and Unauthorized Software</p> <p>CSC 3: Secure Configurations for Hardware and Software on Mobile</p>	<p>OV-SPP-002: Cyber Policy and Strategy Planner</p> <p>PR-CDA-001: Cyber Defense Analyst</p> <p>SP-ARC-001: Enterprise Architect</p>
		<p>PR.DS-8: Integrity checking mechanisms are used to verify hardware integrity.</p>	<p>SA-10: Developer Configuration Management</p>	<p>A.11.2.4: Equipment maintenance</p>	<p>Not applicable</p>	<p>OM-ADM-001: System Administrator</p>

Specific product used	How the component functions in the example solution	Applicable NIST Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories	Applicable NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5 Controls	ISO/IEC 27001:2013	CIS 6	Applicable NIST SP 800-181 NICE Framework Work Roles (2017)
			SI-7: Software, Firmware, and Information Integrity			SP-ARC-001: Enterprise Architect
		DE.CM-4: Malicious code is detected.	SC-35: External Malicious Code Identification SI-7: Software, Firmware, and Information Integrity	A.12.2.1: Controls Against Malware	CSC 4: Continuous Vulnerability Assessment and Remediation CSC 7: Email and Web Browser Protections CSC 8: Malware Defenses CSC 12: Boundary Defense	PR-CDA-001: Cyber Defense Analyst PR-INF-001: Cyber Defense Infrastructure Support Specialist
Virtual Private Network						
Palo Alto Networks PA-220	Enforces network security policy for remote devices	PR.AC-3: Remote access is managed.	AC-1, AC-3: Access Control Policy and Procedures	A.6.2.1: Mobile Device Policy A.6.2.2: Teleworking	CSC 12: Boundary Defense	OV-SPP-002: Cyber Policy and Strategy Planner OV-MGT-002:

Specific product used	How the component functions in the example solution	Applicable NIST Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories	Applicable NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5 Controls	ISO/IEC 27001:2013	CIS 6	Applicable NIST SP 800-181 NICE Framework Work Roles (2017)
			<p>AC-19: Access Control for Mobile Devices</p>	<p>A.11.2.6: Security of equipment and assets off-premises</p> <p>A.13.1.1: Network Controls</p> <p>A.13.2.1: Information Transfer Policies and Procedures</p>		<p>Communications Security (COMSEC) Manager</p>
		<p>PR.AC-5: Network integrity is protected (e.g., network segregation, network segmentation).</p>	<p>AC-3: Access Enforcement</p> <p>SC-7: Boundary Protection</p>	<p>A.13.1.1: Network Controls</p> <p>A.13.1.3: Segregation in Networks</p> <p>A.13.2.1: Information Transfer Policies and Procedures</p> <p>A.14.1.2: Securing Application</p>	<p>CSC 9: Limitation and Control of Network Ports, Protocols, and Services</p> <p>CSC 14: Controlled Access Based on the Need to Know</p> <p>CSC 15: Wireless Access Control</p>	<p>PR-CDA-001: Cyber Defense Analyst</p> <p>OM-ADM-001: System Administrator</p>

Specific product used	How the component functions in the example solution	Applicable NIST Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories	Applicable NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5 Controls	ISO/IEC 27001:2013	CIS 6	Applicable NIST SP 800-181 NICE Framework Work Roles (2017)
				<p>Services on Public Networks</p> <p>A.14.1.3: Protecting Application Services Transactions</p>	<p>CSC 18: Application Software Security</p>	
		<p>PR.AC-6: Identities are proofed and bound to credentials and asserted in interactions.</p>	<p>AC-3: Access Enforcement</p> <p>IA-2, IA-4, IA-5, IA-8: Identification and Authentication (Organizational Users)</p> <p>PE-2: Physical Access Authorizations</p> <p>PS-3: Personnel Screening</p>	<p>A.7.1.1: Screening</p> <p>A.9.2.1: User Registration and De-Registration</p>	<p>CSC 16: Account Monitoring and Control</p>	<p>OV-SPP-002: Cyber Policy and Strategy Planner</p> <p>OV-MGT-002: Communications Security (COMSEC) Manager</p>

Specific product used	How the component functions in the example solution	Applicable NIST Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories	Applicable NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5 Controls	ISO/IEC 27001:2013	CIS 6	Applicable NIST SP 800-181 NICE Framework Work Roles (2017)
		<p>PR.DS-2: Data-in-transit is protected.</p>	<p>AC-17(2): Protection of Confidentiality and Integrity Using Encryption</p> <p>SC-8: Transmission Confidentiality and Integrity</p>	<p>A.8.2.3: Handling of Assets</p> <p>A.13.1.1: Network Controls</p> <p>A.13.2.1: Information Transfer Policies and Procedures</p> <p>A.13.2.3: Electronic Messaging</p> <p>A.14.1.2: Securing Application Services on Public Networks</p> <p>A.14.1.3: Protecting Application Services Transactions</p>	<p>CSC 13: Data Protection</p> <p>CSC 14: Controlled Access Based on the Need to Know</p>	<p>OV-SPP-002: Cyber Policy and Strategy Planner</p> <p>OV-MGT-002: Communications Security (COMSEC) Manager</p> <p>OV-LGA-002: Privacy Officer/Privacy Compliance Manager</p>
		<p>PR.PT-4: Communications and control networks are protected.</p>	<p>AC-3, AC-4, AC-17, AC-18: Access Control Family</p>	<p>A.13.1.1: Network Controls</p>	<p>CSC 8: Malware Defenses</p>	<p>PR-INF-001: Cyber Defense Infrastructure</p>

Specific product used	How the component functions in the example solution	Applicable NIST Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories	Applicable NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5 Controls	ISO/IEC 27001:2013	CIS 6	Applicable NIST SP 800-181 NICE Framework Work Roles (2017)
			<p>CP-2: Contingency Plan</p> <p>SC-7, SC-20, SC-21, SC-22, SC-23, SC-24, SC-25, SC-29, SC-32, SC-38, SC-39, SC-40, SC-41, SC-43: System and Communications Protection Family</p>	<p>A.13.2.1: Information Transfer Policies and Procedures</p> <p>A.14.1.3: Protecting Application Services Transactions</p>	<p>CSC 12: Boundary Defense</p> <p>CSC 15: Wireless Access Control</p>	<p>Support Specialist</p> <p>OV-SPP-002: Cyber Policy and Strategy Planner</p> <p>PR-CDA-001: Cyber Defense Analyst</p>

1765 **Appendix H Example Privacy Subcategory and Control Map**

1766 Using the developed privacy information as input, we identified the privacy characteristics of the example solution. We
 1767 developed a privacy control map documenting the example solution’s capabilities with applicable Functions, Categories, and
 1768 Subcategories from the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) Privacy Framework [2]; and NIST SP 800-53
 1769 Revision 5 [38]; and NIST SP 800-181, National Initiative for Cybersecurity Education (NICE) Cybersecurity Workforce Framework
 1770 (Work Roles from 2017 version) [3].

1771 The table that follows maps component functions in the build to the related Subcategories in the NIST Privacy Framework as
 1772 well as to controls in the NIST SP 800-53, Revision 5 controls catalog. Each column maps independently to the build component’s
 1773 functions and, given the specific capabilities of this mobile device security solution, may differ from other NIST-provided
 1774 mappings for the Privacy Framework and SP 800-53 revision. For example, build functions may provide additional capabilities
 1775 beyond what is contemplated by a Privacy Framework Subcategory or that are implemented by additional controls beyond those
 1776 that NIST identified as an informative reference for the Subcategory.

1777 Table H-1’s example privacy control map identifies the privacy characteristic mapping for the products as they were used in the
 1778 example solution. The products may have additional capabilities that we did not use in this example solution. For that reason, it
 1779 is recommended that the mapping not be used as a reference for all of the privacy capabilities these products may be able to
 1780 address. The comprehensive mapping of the NIST Privacy Framework to NIST SP 800-53, Revision 5 controls can be found on the
 1781 NIST Privacy Framework Resource Repository website, in the event an organization’s mobile device security solution is different
 1782 to determine other controls that are appropriate for their environment [62].

1783 **Table H-1 Example Solution’s Privacy Standards and Best Practices Mapping**

Product	How the component functions in the build	Applicable Privacy Framework Subcategories	Applicable NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5 Privacy-Related Controls	Applicable NIST SP 800-181, NICE Framework Work Roles (2017)
IBM MaaS360	MaaS360 can be used to capture an inventory of the types and number of devices deployed and shows the administra-	ID.IM-P7: The data processing environment is identified (e.g., geographic location, internal, cloud, third parties).	CM-12: Information Location CM-13: Data Action Mapping	OV-LGA-002: Privacy Officer/Privacy Compliance Manager OV-TEA-001: Cyber Instructional Curriculum Developer

Product	How the component functions in the build	Applicable Privacy Framework Subcategories	Applicable NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5 Privacy-Related Controls	Applicable NIST SP 800-181, NICE Framework Work Roles (2017)
	<p>tors what data is collected from each enrolled device.</p>		<p>PM-5(1): System Inventory Inventory of Personally Identifiable Information</p> <p>PT-3: Personally Identifiable Information Processing Purposes</p> <p>RA-3: Risk Assessment</p> <p>RA-8: Privacy Impact Assessment</p>	
	<p>Administrators can view data elements in the administration portal. Users can see collected data within the MaaS360 application on their device. Data can be edited and deleted from within the administration console.</p>	<p>CT.DM-P1: Data elements can be accessed for review.</p>	<p>AC-2: Account Management</p> <p>AC-3: Access Enforcement</p> <p>AC-3(14): Access Enforcement Individual Access</p> <p>PM-21: Accounting of Disclosures</p>	<p>OM-DTA-002: Data Analyst</p>

Product	How the component functions in the build	Applicable Privacy Framework Subcategories	Applicable NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5 Privacy-Related Controls	Applicable NIST SP 800-181, NICE Framework Work Roles (2017)
		<p>CT.DM-P3: Data elements can be accessed for alteration.</p>	<p>AC-2: Account Management</p> <p>AC-3: Access Enforcement</p> <p>AC-3(14): Access Enforcement Individual Access</p> <p>PM-21: Accounting of Disclosures</p> <p>SI-18: Personally Identifiable Information Quality Operations</p>	<p>OM-DTA-002: Data Analyst</p>
		<p>CT.DM-P4: Data elements can be accessed for deletion.</p>	<p>AC-2: Account Management</p> <p>AC-3: Access Enforcement</p> <p>SI-18: Personally Identifiable Information Quality Operations</p>	<p>OM-DTA-002: Data Analyst</p>

Product	How the component functions in the build	Applicable Privacy Framework Subcategories	Applicable NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5 Privacy-Related Controls	Applicable NIST SP 800-181, NICE Framework Work Roles (2017)
		<p>CT.DM-P5: Data are destroyed according to policy.</p>	<p>MP-6: Media Sanitization</p> <p>SA-8(33): Security and Privacy Engineering Principles Minimization</p> <p>SI-18: Personally Identifiable Information Quality Operations</p> <p>SR-12: Component Disposal</p>	<p>OM-DTA-002: Data Analyst</p>
		<p>CT.DP-P4: System or device configurations permit selective collection or disclosure of data elements.</p>	<p>CM-6: Configuration Settings</p> <p>SA-8(33): Minimization</p> <p>SC-42(5): Collection Minimization</p> <p>SI-12(1): Information Management and Retention Limit Personally Identifiable Information Elements</p>	<p>OV-LGA-002: Privacy Officer/Privacy Compliance Manager</p>

Product	How the component functions in the build	Applicable Privacy Framework Subcategories	Applicable NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5 Privacy-Related Controls	Applicable NIST SP 800-181, NICE Framework Work Roles (2017)
	Devices may be backed up to the cloud.	PR.PO-P3: Backups of information are conducted, maintained, and tested.	CP-4: Contingency Plan Testing CP-6: Alternate Storage Site CP-9: System Backup	OM-ADM-001: System Administrator
	Devices are issued identity certificates via on-premises certificate infrastructure.	PR.AC-P1: Identities and credentials are issued, managed, verified, revoked, and audited for authorized individuals, processes, and devices.	IA-2: Identification and Authentication (Organizational Users) IA-3: Device Identification and Authentication IA-4: Identifier Management IA-4(4): Identifier Management Identifier User Status	SP-ARC-002: Security Architect PR-CDA-001: Cyber Defense Analyst
	MaaS360 enforces a device personal identification number (PIN) for access.	PR.AC-P2: Physical access to data and devices is managed.	PE-2: Physical Access Authorizations PE-3: Physical Access Control PE-3(1): System Access	OM-DTA-001: Database Administrator OM-DTA-002: Data Analyst

Product	How the component functions in the build	Applicable Privacy Framework Subcategories	Applicable NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5 Privacy-Related Controls	Applicable NIST SP 800-181, NICE Framework Work Roles (2017)
			<p>PE-4: Access Control for Transmission</p> <p>PE-5: Access Control for Output Devices</p> <p>PE-6: Monitoring Physical Access</p> <p>PE-18: Location of System Components</p> <p>PE-20: Asset Monitoring and Tracking</p>	
		<p>PR.DS-P1: Data-at-rest are protected.</p>	<p>MP-2: Media Access</p> <p>MP-4: Media Storage</p> <p>PM-5(1): System Inventory Inventory of Personally Identifiable Information</p> <p>SC-28: Protection of Information at Rest</p>	<p>OM-DTA-001: Database Administrator</p> <p>OM-DTA-002: Data Analyst</p>

Product	How the component functions in the build	Applicable Privacy Framework Subcategories	Applicable NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5 Privacy-Related Controls	Applicable NIST SP 800-181, NICE Framework Work Roles (2017)
	Data flowing between the device and MaaS360 is encrypted with Transport Layer Security.	PR.DS-P2: Data-in-transit are protected.	PM-5(1): System Inventory Inventory of Personally Identifiable Information SC-8: Transmission Confidentiality and Integrity	PR-CIR-001: Cyber Defense Incident Responder
	Restrictions are used that prevent data flow between enterprise and personal applications.	PR.DS-P5: Protections against data leaks are implemented.	PM-5(1): System Inventory Inventory of Personally Identifiable Information AC-4: Information Flow Enforcement	PR-CIR-001: Cyber Defense Incident Responder
	Devices that are jailbroken or otherwise modified beyond original equipment manufacturer status can be detected.	PR.DS-P6: Integrity checking mechanisms are used to verify software, firmware, and information integrity.	PM-22: Personally Identifiable Information Quality Management SI-7: Software, Firmware, and Information Integrity SI-18: Personally Identifiable Information Quality Operations	OM-DTA-002: Data Analyst OM-ANA-001: Systems Security Analyst

Product	How the component functions in the build	Applicable Privacy Framework Subcategories	Applicable NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5 Privacy-Related Controls	Applicable NIST SP 800-181, NICE Framework Work Roles (2017)
<p>Zimperium</p>	<p>Zimperium checks the device for unauthorized modifications.</p>	<p>PR.DS-P1: Data-at-rest are protected.</p>	<p>PM-5(1): System Inventory Inventory of Personally Identifiable Information</p> <p>SC-28: Protection of Information at Rest</p>	<p>SP-ARC-002: Security Architect</p> <p>PR-CDA-001: Cyber Defense Analyst</p>
		<p>PR.DS-P2: Data-in-transit are protected.</p>	<p>PM-5(1): System Inventory Inventory of Personally Identifiable Information</p> <p>SC-8: Transmission Confidentiality and Integrity</p> <p>SC-11: Trusted Path</p>	<p>OM-DTA-002: Data Analyst</p> <p>OM-ANA-001: Systems Security Analyst</p>

Product	How the component functions in the build	Applicable Privacy Framework Subcategories	Applicable NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5 Privacy-Related Controls	Applicable NIST SP 800-181, NICE Framework Work Roles (2017)
		<p>PR.DS-P6: Integrity checking mechanisms are used to verify software, firmware, and information integrity.</p>	<p>PM-22: Personally Identifiable Information Quality Management</p> <p>SC-16: Transmission of Security Attributes</p> <p>SI-7: Boundary Protection</p> <p>SI-10: Network Disconnect</p> <p>SI-18: Personally Identifiable Information Quality Operations</p>	<p>OM-DTA-002: Data Analyst</p> <p>OM-ANA-001: Systems Security Analyst</p>
<p>Kryptowire</p>	<p>Kryptowire can identify applications that do not use best practices, such as lack of encryption or hardcoded credentials.</p>	<p>CM.AW-P1: Mechanisms (e.g., notices, internal or public reports) for communicating data processing purposes, practices, associated privacy risks, and options for enabling individuals' data processing preferences and requests</p>	<p>AC-8: System Use Notification</p>	<p>SP-ARC-002: Security Architect</p> <p>PR-CDA-001: Cyber Defense Analyst</p>

Product	How the component functions in the build	Applicable Privacy Framework Subcategories	Applicable NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5 Privacy-Related Controls	Applicable NIST SP 800-181, NICE Framework Work Roles (2017)
		are established and in place.		
		CM.AW-P3: System/product/ service design enables data processing visibility.	PL-8: Security and Privacy Architecture PM-5(1): System Inventory Inventory of Personally Identifiable Information	SP-ARC-002: Security Architect PR-CDA-001: Cyber Defense Analyst
		CM.AW-P6: Data provenance and lineage are maintained and can be accessed for review or transmission/ disclosure.	AC-16: Security and Privacy Attributes SC-16: Transmission of Security Attributes	SP-ARC-002: Security Architect PR-CDA-001: Cyber Defense Analyst
		PR.DS-P1: Data-at-rest are protected.	PM-5(1): System Inventory Inventory of Personally Identifiable Information SC-28: Protection of Information at Rest	SP-ARC-002: Security Architect PR-CDA-001: Cyber Defense Analyst
		PR.DS-P2: Data-in-transit are protected.	PM-5(1): System Inventory Inventory of Personally Identifiable Information	SP-ARC-002: Security Architect PR-CDA-001: Cyber Defense Analyst

Product	How the component functions in the build	Applicable Privacy Framework Subcategories	Applicable NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5 Privacy-Related Controls	Applicable NIST SP 800-181, NICE Framework Work Roles (2017)
			<p>SC-8: Transmission Confidentiality and Integrity</p> <p>SC-11: Trusted Path</p>	
<p>Palo Alto Networks PA-220</p>	<p>Provides firewall and virtual private network capabilities.</p>	<p>PR.DS-P2: Data-in-transit are protected.</p>	<p>PM-5(1): System Inventory Inventory of Personally Identifiable Information</p> <p>SC-8: Transmission Confidentiality and Integrity</p> <p>SC-11: Trusted Path</p>	<p>SP-ARC-002: Security Architect</p> <p>PR-CDA-001: Cyber Defense Analyst</p>
		<p>PR.AC-P4: Access permissions and authorizations are managed, incorporating the principles of least privilege and separation of duties.</p>	<p>AC-2: Account Management</p> <p>AC-3: Access Enforcement</p> <p>AC-5: Separation of Duties</p> <p>AC-6: Least Privilege</p> <p>AC-24: Access Control Decisions</p>	<p>SP-ARC-002: Security Architect</p> <p>PR-CDA-001: Cyber Defense Analyst</p>

Product	How the component functions in the build	Applicable Privacy Framework Subcategories	Applicable NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5 Privacy-Related Controls	Applicable NIST SP 800-181, NICE Framework Work Roles (2017)
		<p>PR.AC-P5: Network integrity is protected (e.g., network segregation, network segmentation).</p>	<p>AC-4: Information Flow Enforcement</p> <p>AC-10: Access Control</p> <p>SC-7: Boundary Protection</p> <p>SC-10: Network Disconnect</p>	<p>OM-DTA-002: Data Analyst</p> <p>OM-ANA-001: Systems Security Analyst</p>
		<p>PR.PT-P3: Communications and control networks are protected.</p>	<p>AC-12: Session Termination</p> <p>AC-17: Remote Access</p> <p>AC-18: Wireless Access</p> <p>SC-5: Denial of Service Protection</p> <p>SC-7: Boundary Protection</p> <p>SC-10: Network Disconnect</p> <p>SC-11: Trusted Path</p>	<p>OV-LGA-002: Privacy Officer/Privacy Compliance Manager</p> <p>PR-CDA-001: Cyber Defense Analyst</p>

Product	How the component functions in the build	Applicable Privacy Framework Subcategories	Applicable NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5 Privacy-Related Controls	Applicable NIST SP 800-181, NICE Framework Work Roles (2017)
			<p>SC-21: Secure Name/Address Resolution Service (Recursive or Caching Resolver)</p> <p>SC-23: Session Authenticity</p>	
Qualcomm	The trusted execution environment provides data confidentiality and integrity.	PR.DS-P6: Integrity checking mechanisms are used to verify software, firmware, and information integrity.	<p>PM-22: Personally Identifiable Information Quality Management</p> <p>SC-16: Transmission of Security and Privacy Attributes</p> <p>SI-7: Software, Firmware, and Information Integrity</p> <p>SI-10: Information Input Validation</p> <p>SI-18: Personally Identifiable Information Quality Operations</p>	<p>PR-INF-001: Cyber Defense Infrastructure Support Specialist</p> <p>OM-ANA-001: Systems Security Analyst</p>

NIST SPECIAL PUBLICATION 1800-22 Supplement

Mobile Device Security: Bring Your Own Device (BYOD)

Supplement:

Example Scenario: Putting Guidance into Practice

Kaitlin Boeckl
Nakia Grayson
Gema Howell
Naomi Lefkovitz

Applied Cybersecurity Division
Information Technology Laboratory

Jason G. Ajmo
Milissa McGinnis*
Kenneth F. Sandlin
Oksana Slivina
Julie Snyder
Paul Ward

The MITRE Corporation
McLean, VA

**Former employee; all work for this publication done while at employer.*

March 2021

DRAFT

This publication is available free of charge from
<https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/projects/building-blocks/mobile-device-security/bring-your-own-device>



1 **1 Applying This Build: Example Scenario**

2 An example scenario about a fictional company named Great Seneca Accounting illustrates how
3 organizations can use this practice guide's example solution. The example shows how Bring Your Own
4 Device (BYOD) objectives can align with a fictional organization's security and privacy priorities through
5 the use of risk management standards, guidance, and tools.

6 To demonstrate how an organization may use this National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST)
7 Special Publication (SP) and other NIST tools to implement a BYOD use case, the National Cybersecurity
8 Center of Excellence created an example scenario that centers around a fictional, small-to-mid-size
9 organization called Great Seneca Accounting. This scenario exemplifies the issues that an organization
10 may face when addressing common enterprise BYOD security challenges.

11 **1.1 Standards and Guidance Used in this Example Scenario**

12 In addition to the Executive Summary contained in Volume A, and the architecture description in
13 Volume B, this practice guide also includes a series of how-to instructions in Volume C. The how-to
14 instructions in Volume C provide step-by-step instructions covering the initial setup (installation or
15 provisioning) and configuration for each component of the architecture. These step-by-step instructions
16 can help security engineers rapidly deploy and evaluate the example solution in their test environment.

17 The example solution uses standards-based, commercially available products that can be used by an
18 organization interested in deploying a BYOD solution. The example solution provides recommendations
19 for enhancing the security and privacy infrastructure by integrating on-premises and cloud-hosted
20 mobile security technologies. This practice guide provides an example solution that an organization may
21 use in whole or in part as the basis for creating a custom solution that best supports their unique needs.

22 The fictional Great Seneca Accounting organization illustrates how this guide may be applied by an
23 organization, starting with a mobile device infrastructure that lacked mobile device security architecture
24 concepts. Great Seneca employed multiple NIST cybersecurity and privacy risk management tools to
25 understand the gaps in its architecture and methods to enhance security of its systems and privacy for
26 its employees.

27 This example scenario provides useful context for using the following NIST Frameworks and other
28 relevant tools to help mitigate some of the security and privacy challenges that organizations may
29 encounter when deploying BYOD capabilities:

- 30 • NIST *Framework for Improving Critical Infrastructure Cybersecurity*, Version 1.1 (Cybersecurity
31 Framework) [1]
- 32 • the *NIST Privacy Framework: A Tool For Improving Privacy Through Enterprise Risk Management*,
33 Version 1.0 (Privacy Framework) [2]
- 34 • NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-181 *National Initiative for Cybersecurity Education (NICE)*
35 *Cybersecurity Workforce Framework* [3]
- 36 • NIST Risk Management Framework [4]

- 37 • NIST Mobile Threat Catalogue [5]

38 For additional information, see Volume B's Appendix D.

39 2 About Great Seneca Accounting

40 In the example scenario, Great Seneca Accounting is a fictional accounting firm that grew from a single
41 office location into a larger firm with a regional presence. Great Seneca Accounting performs accounting
42 functions related to capturing, communicating, processing, transmitting, and analyzing financial data
43 and accounting services for its customers.

44 When the firm was first created, most of its employees worked from the Great Seneca Accounting
45 office, with minimal use of mobile devices. They were able to do this without actively embracing mobile
46 device usage because most of the employees worked at their desks at the company's single location.

47 Over the years, the Great Seneca Accounting company grew from a local company, where all of its
48 employees performed work at their desks by using desktop computers provided by the organization,
49 into a regional firm with employees who work remotely and who support regional customers.

50 Now, many of the employees spend part of their week traveling and working from customer or other
51 remote locations. This has prompted the organization to specify, as a strategic priority, the need to
52 support employees to work remotely, while both traveling and working from a customer location. As
53 such, the company wants to embrace BYOD solutions to support its remote work.

54 **Figure 1-1** shows an overview of the typical work environments for a Great Seneca Accounting
55 employee. Many employees work remotely while using their own mobile phones and tablets to perform
56 both work and personal activities throughout the day.

57 **Figure 1-1 Great Seneca Accounting's Work Environments**



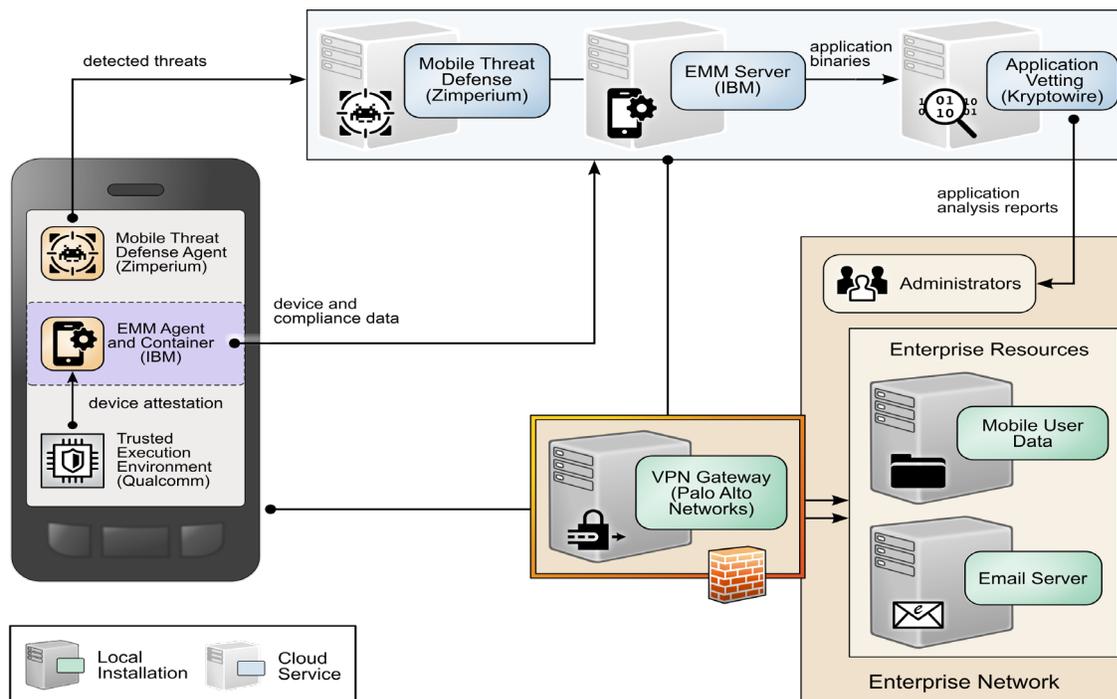
58 Great Seneca Accounting’s corporate management initiated a complete review of all policies,
 59 procedures, and technology relating to its mobile deployment to ensure that the company is well
 60 protected against attacks involving personal mobile devices. This includes mitigating risks against its
 61 devices, custom applications, and corporate infrastructure supporting mobile services. Management
 62 identified NIST’s Risk Management Framework (RMF) [4] and Privacy Risk Assessment Methodology
 63 (PRAM) [6] as useful tools for supporting this analysis. The company developed Cybersecurity
 64 Framework and Privacy Framework Target Profiles to guide Great Seneca Accounting’s decision-making
 65 because the Target Profiles link Great Seneca Accounting’s mission and business priorities with
 66 supporting cybersecurity and privacy activities.

67 Great Seneca Accounting identified the scope of their mobile solution to be both Android and Apple
 68 personally owned mobile phones and tablets. While this example scenario intends to provide an
 69 exemplar of organization guidance with a description of BYOD concepts and how to apply those
 70 concepts, this example scenario should not suggest a limit on BYOD uses.

71 Great Seneca Accounting plans to use NIST SP 1800-22 (this practice guide) to inform its updated BYOD
 72 architecture as well as NIST’s Mobile Threat Catalogue to identify threats to mobile deployment. These
 73 NIST frameworks and tools used are described further in [Appendix E](#).

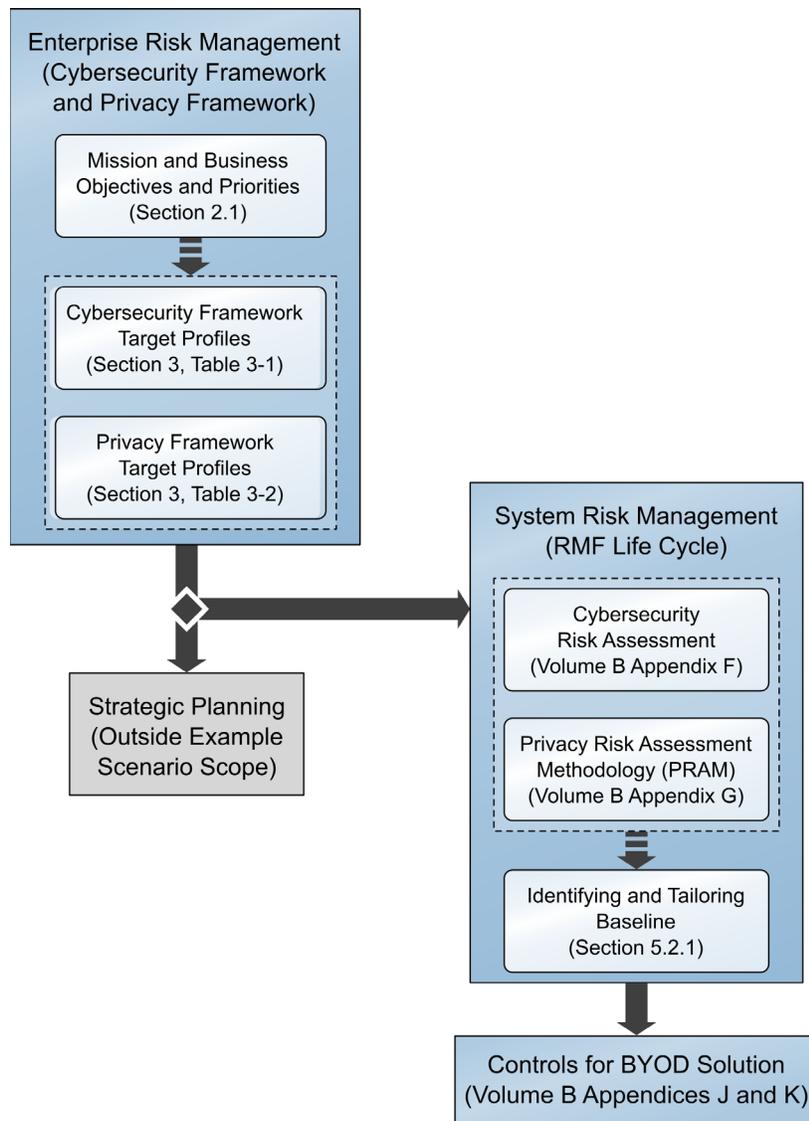
74 As shown in [Figure 2-1](#), this example solution applied multiple mobile device security technologies.
 75 These included a cloud-based Enterprise Mobility Management solution integrated with cloud- and
 76 agent-based mobile security technologies to help deploy a set of security and privacy capabilities that
 77 support the example solution.

78 **Figure 2-2 Example Solution Architecture**



79 **Figure 2-2** shows the overall process that Great Seneca Accounting plans to follow. It highlights key
 80 activities from various NIST guidance documents related to security and privacy risk management, each
 81 of which is discussed in the sections identified in **Figure 2-2**. Please note that this process is an
 82 abbreviated version of steps provided in NIST SP 800-37 Revision 2 [7], which shows how some available
 83 resources may be used by any organization.

84 **Figure 2-3 Great Seneca Accounting’s Security and Privacy Risk Management Steps**



85 **2.1 Great Seneca Accounting’s Business/Mission Objectives**

86 Great Seneca Accounting developed a mission statement and a set of supporting business/mission
 87 objectives to ensure that its activities align with its core purpose. The company has had the same
 88 mission since it was founded:

89 **Mission Statement**

90 *Provide financial services with integrity and responsiveness*

91 While Great Seneca Accounting has a number of business/mission objectives, those below relate to its
92 interest in BYOD, listed in priority order:

- 93 1. Provide good data stewardship.
- 94 2. Enable timely communication with clients.
- 95 3. Provide innovative financial services.
- 96 4. Enable workforce flexibility.

97 **3 Great Seneca Accounting’s Target Profiles**

98 Great Seneca Accounting used the NIST Cybersecurity Framework and *NIST Privacy Framework* as key
99 strategic planning tools to improve its security and privacy programs. It followed the processes outlined
100 in the frameworks, and as part of that effort, created *two* Target Profiles—one for cybersecurity and one
101 for privacy.

102 These Target Profiles describe the desired or aspirational state of Great Seneca Accounting by
103 identifying and prioritizing the cybersecurity and privacy activities and outcomes needed to support its
104 enterprise business/mission objectives. The Subcategories in each Framework Core articulate those
105 cybersecurity and privacy activities and outcomes.

106 **Note:** See [Appendix E](#) for a high-level description of the Cybersecurity Framework and Privacy
107 Framework.

108 To understand what Subcategories to prioritize implementing in each framework, Great Seneca
109 Accounting considered the importance of the Subcategories for accomplishing each business/mission
110 objective. The Target Profiles reflect that discussion by designating prioritized Subcategories as low,
111 moderate, or high.

112 Subcategory improvements important for BYOD deployment also became part of its Target Profiles
113 because Great Seneca Accounting was upgrading its existing information technology infrastructure as
114 part of its BYOD implementation.

115 The Cybersecurity Framework Target Profile in [Table 3-1](#) and the Privacy Framework Target Profile in
116 [Table 3-2](#) are included as examples of Great Seneca Accounting’s identification of the business/mission
117 objectives that are relevant to their BYOD deployment.

118 Great Seneca Accounting chose to address the Subcategories that are prioritized as moderate and high
119 for multiple business/mission objectives in its Target Profiles for this year’s BYOD deployment with plans
120 to address the low Subcategories in the future.

121 [Table 3-1](#) and [Table 3-2](#) include only those Subcategories that are prioritized as moderate or high for the
122 business/mission Objectives. Any Subcategory designated as low is included in [Table 3-1](#) and [Table 3-2](#)
123 only because it is high or moderate for another business/mission objective.

124 Great Seneca Accounting used the Target Profiles to help guide risk management decisions throughout
125 the organization’s activities, including making decisions regarding budget allocation, technology design,
126 and staffing for its programs and technology deployments. Discussions for developing and using the
127 Target Profiles include stakeholders in various parts of the organization, such as business/mission
128 program owners, data stewards, cybersecurity practitioners, privacy practitioners, legal and compliance
129 experts, and technology experts.

130 **Note:** Low, moderate, and high designations indicate the level of relative importance among
131 Subcategories for Great Seneca to accomplish a business/mission objective.

132 Table 3-1 Great Seneca Accounting’s Cybersecurity Framework Target Profile

Cybersecurity Framework Core			BYOD-Related Business/Mission Objectives			
Function	Category	Subcategory	(1) Provide Good Data Stewardship	(2) Enable timely communication with clients	(3) Provide Innovative Financial Services	(4) Enable Workforce Flexibility
IDENTIFY	Asset Management	ID.AM-1: Physical devices and systems within the organization are inventoried.	moderate	moderate	moderate	low
		ID.AM-2: Software platforms and applications within the organization are inventoried.	moderate	moderate	moderate	low
	Risk Assessment	ID.RA-1: Asset vulnerabilities are identified and documented.	moderate	moderate	moderate	moderate
		ID.RA-3: Threats, both internal and external, are identified and documented.	moderate	moderate	moderate	moderate
PROTECT	Identity Management and Access Control	PR.AC-1: Identities and credentials are issued, managed, verified, revoked, and audited for authorized devices, users, and processes.	moderate	high	moderate	high
		PR.AC-3: Remote access is managed.	moderate	high	high	high
		PR.AC-5: Network integrity is protected (e.g., network	high	high	high	high

Cybersecurity Framework Core			BYOD-Related Business/Mission Objectives			
Function	Category	Subcategory	(1) Provide Good Data Stewardship	(2) Enable timely communication with clients	(3) Provide Innovative Financial Services	(4) Enable Workforce Flexibility
		segregation, network segmentation).				
		PR.AC-6: Identities are proofed and bound to credentials and asserted in interactions.	moderate	high	high	high
	Data Security	PR.DS-1: Data-at-rest is protected.	high	moderate	moderate	high
		PR.DS-2: Data-in-transit is protected.	moderate	high	moderate	high
		PR.DS-6: Integrity-checking mechanisms are used to verify software, firmware, and information integrity.	high	moderate	moderate	high
		PR.DS-8: Integrity checking mechanisms are used to verify hardware integrity.	moderate	moderate	moderate	low
	Information Protection Processes and Procedures	PR.IP-1: A baseline configuration of information technology/industrial control systems is created and maintained incorporating security principles.	moderate	moderate	moderate	low

Cybersecurity Framework Core			BYOD-Related Business/Mission Objectives			
Function	Category	Subcategory	(1) Provide Good Data Stewardship	(2) Enable timely communication with clients	(3) Provide Innovative Financial Services	(4) Enable Workforce Flexibility
	Protective Technology	PR.PT-4: Communications and control networks are protected.	low	moderate	moderate	low
DETECT	Anomalies and Events	DE.AE-5: Incident alert thresholds are established.	high	high	high	high
	Security Continuous Monitoring	DE.CM-4: Malicious code is detected.	high	high	high	high
		DE.CM-5: Unauthorized mobile code is detected.	moderate	moderate	moderate	low
		DE.CM-8: Vulnerability scans are performed.	high	high	high	high

133 Table 3-2 Great Seneca Accounting’s Privacy Target Profile

Privacy Framework Core			BYOD-Related Business/Mission Objectives			
Function	Category	Subcategory	(1) Provide Good Data Stewardship	(2) Enable timely communication with clients	(3) Provide Innovative Financial Services	(4) Enable Workforce Flexibility
IDENTIFY-P	Inventory and Mapping	ID.IM-P7: The data processing environment is identified (e.g., geographic location, internal, cloud, third parties).	high	high	high	high
GOVERN-P	Governance Policies, Processes, and Procedures	GV.PO-P1: Organizational privacy values and policies (e.g., conditions on data processing, individuals’ prerogatives with respect to data processing) are established and communicated.	high	high	high	high
		GV.PO-P5: Legal, regulatory, and contractual requirements regarding privacy are understood and managed.	high	high	high	high
	Monitoring and Review	GV.MT-P3: Policies, processes, and procedures for assessing compliance with legal requirements and privacy policies are established and in place.	high	high	high	high

Privacy Framework Core			BYOD-Related Business/Mission Objectives			
Function	Category	Subcategory	(1) Provide Good Data Stewardship	(2) Enable timely communication with clients	(3) Provide Innovative Financial Services	(4) Enable Workforce Flexibility
		GV.MT-P5: Policies, processes, and procedures are established and in place to receive, analyze, and respond to problematic data actions disclosed to the organization from internal and external sources (e.g., internal discovery, privacy researchers, professional events).	high	high	high	high
CONTROL-P	Data Management	CT.DM-P1: Data elements can be accessed for review.	high	moderate	high	moderate
		CT.DM-P3: Data elements can be accessed for alteration.	high	moderate	high	moderate
		CT.DM-P4: Data elements can be accessed for deletion.	high	moderate	high	moderate
		CT.DM-P5: Data are destroyed according to policy.	high	moderate	high	moderate
	Disassociated Processing	CT.DP-P4: System or device configurations permit	high	high	high	high

Privacy Framework Core			BYOD-Related Business/Mission Objectives			
Function	Category	Subcategory	(1) Provide Good Data Stewardship	(2) Enable timely communication with clients	(3) Provide Innovative Financial Services	(4) Enable Workforce Flexibility
		selective collection or disclosure of data elements.				
COMMUNICATE-P	Data Processing Awareness	CM.AW-P5: Data corrections or deletions can be communicated to individuals or organizations (e.g., data sources) in the data processing ecosystem.	high	moderate	moderate	moderate
PROTECT-P	Data Protection Policies, Processes, and Procedures	PR.PO-P3: Backups of information are conducted, maintained, and tested.	high	moderate	high	moderate
		PR.AC-P1: Identities and credentials are issued, managed, verified, revoked, and audited for authorized individuals, processes, and devices.	moderate	high	moderate	high
	Identity Management, Authentication, and Access Control	PR.AC-P2: Physical access to data and devices is managed.	high	moderate	high	moderate
		PR.AC-P4: Access permissions and authorizations are managed, incorporating the principles of least privilege and separation of duties.	high	moderate	high	moderate

Privacy Framework Core			BYOD-Related Business/Mission Objectives			
Function	Category	Subcategory	(1) Provide Good Data Stewardship	(2) Enable timely communication with clients	(3) Provide Innovative Financial Services	(4) Enable Workforce Flexibility
		PR.AC-P5: Network integrity is protected (e.g., network segregation, network segmentation).	high	high	high	high
		PR.DS-P1: Data-at-rest are protected.	high	moderate	moderate	high
	Data Security	PR.DS-P2: Data-in-transit are protected.	moderate	high	moderate	high
		PR.DS-P5: Protections against data leaks are implemented.	high	moderate	high	moderate
		PR.DS-P6: Integrity checking mechanisms are used to verify software, firmware, and information integrity.	high	moderate	moderate	high
		PR.PT-P3: Communications and control networks are protected.	moderate	high	moderate	high

134 4 Great Seneca Accounting Embraces BYOD

135 Great Seneca Accounting now allows its staff to use their personal mobile devices to perform their daily
136 work duties on an as-needed basis. Accountants use the devices for various tasks including
137 communicating with client organizations and other employees, collecting confidential client information,
138 analyzing financial transactions, generating reports, accessing tax and payroll information, and creating
139 and reviewing comprehensive financial statements.

140 Great Seneca accountants work from many locations including their corporate office building, their
141 homes, their customers' offices, and other locations. And to be able to work in all of these locations,
142 they require the use of mobile devices to perform their job functions.

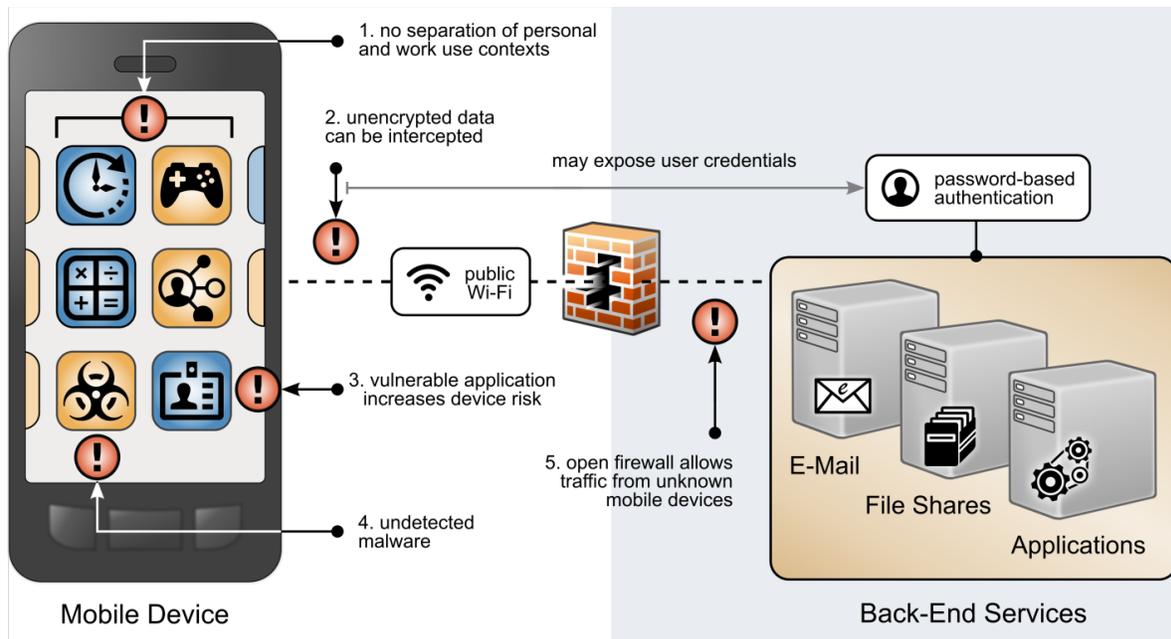
143 Great Seneca Accounting's current mobile infrastructure enables accountants to perform their job
144 duties by using their personally owned devices, despite minimal security installed and enforced on these
145 devices. Examples of security concerns with the use of personally owned devices are:

- 146 ▪ Employees can connect to any Wi-Fi network to perform work-related activities when they are
147 working on the road, including at a client's site.
- 148 ▪ Custom mobile applications being sideloaded onto devices that employees use.
- 149 ▪ The personally owned devices allow users to install applications on an as-needed basis without
150 separation of enterprise and personal data.

151 While not affecting Great Seneca Accounting, a string of well-publicized cybersecurity attacks have
152 recently been reported in the news, and this prompted Great Seneca to review its mobile device security
153 and privacy deployment strategy. When making BYOD deployment decisions, Great Seneca Accounting
154 plans to prioritize implementing cybersecurity and privacy capabilities that would enable it to
155 accomplish its business/mission objectives (i.e., its reasons for deploying BYOD capabilities).

156 To do this, Great Seneca Accounting conducted a technical assessment of its current BYOD architecture
157 to help it understand ways to improve the confidentiality, integrity, availability, and privacy of data and
158 devices associated with its BYOD deployment. The company identified several vulnerabilities based on
159 its current mobile device deployment. [Figure 4-1](#) below presents a subset of those vulnerabilities.

160 Figure 4-1 Great Seneca Accounting's Current Mobile Deployment Architecture (Before Security and
 161 Privacy Enhancements)



162 Figure 4-1 highlights the following vulnerabilities with a red exclamation mark:

- 163 1. BYOD deployments can place organizational and personal data, as well as employees' privacy, at
 164 risk. Organizational and personal data can become commingled if either the same application is
 165 used in both contexts or if multiple applications access shared device resources (e.g., contacts or
 166 calendar) as applications for both personal and work usage are installed. This also puts
 167 employees' privacy at risk, as the organization can have visibility into their personal life outside
 168 work.
- 169 2. BYOD deployments can leverage nonsecure networks. As employees use nonsecure Wi-Fi
 170 hotspots, mobile devices that are connecting to Great Seneca Accounting from those
 171 unencrypted networks place data transmitted prior to a secure connection at risk of discovery
 172 and eavesdropping, including passwords.
- 173 3. As employees install applications on their personally owned devices, the applications can have
 174 unidentified vulnerabilities or weaknesses that increase the risk of device compromise (e.g.,
 175 applications that access contacts may now have access to the organization's client contact
 176 information). Further, legitimate, privacy-intrusive applications can legally collect data through
 177 terms and conditions and requested permissions.
- 178 4. On personally owned devices without restriction policies in place, employees may inadvertently
 179 download applications outside official application stores, which are malware in disguise.

180 5. Because personally owned mobile devices can connect from unknown locations, firewall rules
181 must allow inbound connections from unrecognized, potentially malicious Internet Protocol
182 addresses.

183 In addition to identifying the technical assets and the vulnerabilities, Great Seneca Accounting identified
184 the scope of the mobile solution (i.e., both Android and Apple personally owned mobile phones and
185 tablets) and the regulatory requirements or guidance that will apply to their deployment and solution
186 (e.g., encryption will be Federal Information Processing Standards [FIPS]-validated to protect sensitive
187 accounting information).

188 **5 Applying NIST Risk Management Methodologies to Great** 189 **Seneca Accounting’s BYOD Architecture**

190 Sections 2 and 3 described Great Seneca Accounting, their business mission, and what security and
191 privacy areas they consider most important. Great Seneca created Target Profiles that mapped their
192 BYOD-related mission/business objectives and priorities with the Functions, Categories, and
193 Subcategories of both the Cybersecurity Framework and the Privacy Framework. Those Cybersecurity
194 Framework and Privacy Framework Target Profiles are provided in [Table 3-1](#) and [Table 3-2](#) in Section 3
195 of this document.

196 Now, the Target Profiles provided in Section 3 will demonstrate the role they play in identifying and
197 prioritizing the implementation of the security and privacy controls, as well as the capabilities that Great
198 Seneca would like to include in its new BYOD security and privacy-enhanced architecture.

199 **5.1 Using Great Seneca Accounting’s Target Profiles**

200 The Cybersecurity Framework maps its Subcategories to Informative References. The Informative
201 References contained in the Framework Core provide examples of methods that Great Seneca can use
202 to achieve its desired outcomes. The Cybersecurity Framework’s Subcategory and Informative
203 References mappings include NIST SP 800-53 controls.

204 An illustrative segment of the Cybersecurity Framework’s Framework Core is shown in [Figure 5-1](#).
205 Highlighted in the green box is an example of how the Cybersecurity Framework provides a mapping of
206 Subcategories to Informative References.

207 **Figure 5-1 Cybersecurity Framework Subcategory to Informative Reference Mapping**

Function	Category	Subcategory	Informative References
IDENTIFY (ID)	Asset Management (ID.AM): The data, personnel, devices, systems, and facilities that enable the organization to achieve business purposes are identified and managed consistent with their relative importance to organizational objectives and the organization's risk strategy.	ID.AM-1: Physical devices and systems within the organization are inventoried	CIS CSC 1 COBIT 5 BAI09.01, BAI09.02 ISA 62443-2-1:2009 4.2.3.4 ISA 62443-3-3:2013 SR 7.8 ISO/IEC 27001:2013 A.8.1.1, A.8.1.2 NIST SP 800-53 Rev. 4 CM-8, PM-5
		ID.AM-2: Software platforms and applications within the organization are inventoried	CIS CSC 2 COBIT 5 BAI09.01, BAI09.02, BAI09.05 ISA 62443-2-1:2009 4.2.3.4 ISA 62443-3-3:2013 SR 7.8 ISO/IEC 27001:2013 A.8.1.1, A.8.1.2, A.12.5.1 NIST SP 800-53 Rev. 4 CM-8, PM-5
		ID.AM-3: Organizational communication and data flows are mapped	CIS CSC 12 COBIT 5 DSS05.02 ISA 62443-2-1:2009 4.2.3.4 ISO/IEC 27001:2013 A.13.2.1, A.13.2.2 NIST SP 800-53 Rev. 4 AC-4, CA-3, CA-9, PL-8
		ID.AM-4: External information systems are catalogued	CIS CSC 12 COBIT 5 APO02.02, APO10.04, DSS01.02 ISO/IEC 27001:2013 A.11.2.6 NIST SP 800-53 Rev. 4 AC-20, SA-9

208 To provide a starting point for Great Seneca’s mapping of their Cybersecurity Framework and Privacy
 209 Framework Target Profiles to the NIST SP 800-53 security and privacy controls and capabilities, Great
 210 Seneca leveraged the mapping provided in the Cybersecurity Framework. An example of the
 211 Cybersecurity Framework’s mapping is provided in [Figure 5-1](#).

212 See Volume B’s Appendixes G and H for additional information on the security and privacy outcomes
 213 that this document’s example solution supports. Appendixes G and H provide a mapping of this
 214 document’s example solution capabilities with the related Subcategories in the Cybersecurity
 215 Framework and Privacy Framework.

216 Volume B’s Appendix G provides the Cybersecurity Framework Subcategory mappings, and Volume B’s
 217 Appendix H provides the Privacy Framework Subcategory mappings. An excerpt of Volume B’s Appendix
 218 G is shown below in [Figure 5-2](#).

219 **Figure 5-2 Volume B Appendix G Example Solution Cybersecurity Framework Mapping Excerpt**

Specific product used	How the component functions in the example solution	Applicable NIST Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories	Applicable NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5 Controls	ISO/IEC 27001:2013	CIS 6	Applicable NIST SP 800-181 NICE Framework Work Roles
Mobile Threat Defense						
Kryptowire Cloud Service	Application Vetting	ID.RA-1: Asset vulnerabilities are identified and documented.	CA-2, CA-7, CA-8: Security Assessment and Authorization RA-3, RA-5: Risk Assessment SA-4: Acquisition Process SI-7: Software, Firmware, and Information Integrity	A.12.6.1: Control of technical vulnerabilities A.18.2.3: Technical Compliance Review	CSC 4: Continuous Vulnerability Assessment and Remediation	SP-RSK-002: Security Control Assessor SP-ARC-002: Security Architect OM-ANA-001: Systems Security Analyst

220

221 **5.2 Great Seneca Uses the Target Profiles to Help Prioritize Security and**
 222 **Privacy Control Deployment**

223 Due to budget constraints, Great Seneca Accounting will focus on implementing the higher priority
 224 security and privacy controls that were identified in the organization’s two Target Profiles first. The
 225 company will then focus on implementing lower priority controls when more funding becomes available.
 226 This is accomplished by Great Seneca Accounting comparing the prioritized Subcategories contained in
 227 Section 3’s [Table 3-1](#) and [Table 3-2](#) with the outcomes that the example solution supports.

228 By comparing its Cybersecurity Framework Target Profile ([Table 3-1](#)) with the Subcategories supported
 229 by the example solution that are shown in Volume B’s Appendix G, Great Seneca Accounting determines
 230 that the example solution will help it achieve its desired Cybersecurity Framework Target Profile
 231 outcomes.

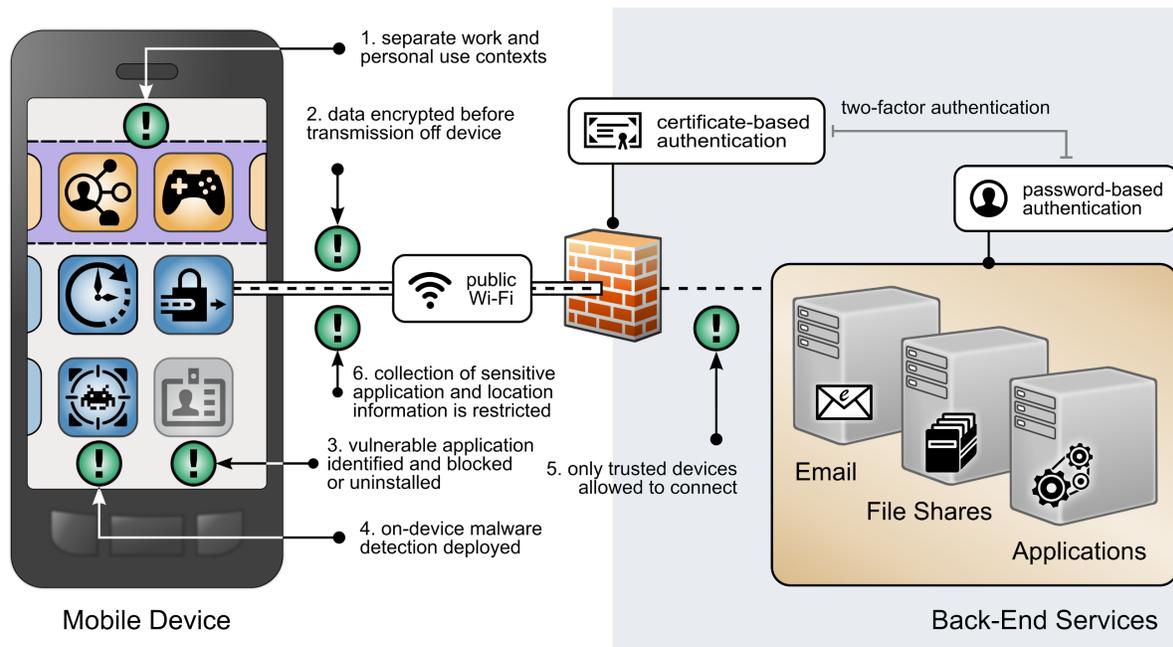
232 Great Seneca performs a similar comparison of the Privacy Framework Target Profile in [Table 3-2](#) with
 233 the Subcategories supported by the example solution that are shown in Volume B’s Appendix H. From
 234 that comparison of the example solution’s capabilities and Great Seneca’s privacy-related architecture
 235 goals, Great Seneca determines that the example solution provided in this practice guide will help it to
 236 achieve the privacy-related outcomes that were identified in [Table 3-2](#)’s Privacy Framework Target
 237 Profile.

238 **5.2.1 Identifying and Tailoring the Baseline Controls**

239 Now that Great Seneca Accounting understands how the Target Profiles will help prioritize the
 240 implementation of the high-level security and privacy goals shown in [Figure 5-3](#), it would like to look

241 more closely at the NIST SP 800-53 controls it will initially implement in its new BYOD architecture. This
 242 will help Great Seneca identify the capabilities it will deploy first to meet its architecture needs.

243 **Figure 5-3 Security and Privacy Goals**



244
 245 Volume B’s Appendix G and H provide a list of the controls that the example solution implements,
 246 including how the controls in the example solution align to the Subcategories in both the Cybersecurity
 247 Framework and Privacy Framework. Because these controls only focus on the example solution, Great
 248 Seneca will need to implement additional controls that address the unique risks associated with its
 249 environment.

250 To help identify the specific controls Great Seneca Accounting will be implementing to support the new
 251 BYOD architecture, it uses the NIST RMF process to manage security and privacy risk for its systems. The
 252 organization decides to follow the RMF guidance in NIST SP 800-37 [7] to conduct security and privacy
 253 risk assessments as it continues preparing to design its new solution.

254 **5.3 Great Seneca Accounting Performs a Risk Assessment**

255 Great Seneca Accounting completes a security risk assessment by using the guidance in NIST SP 800-30
 256 [8] and the Mobile Threat Catalogue [5] to identify cybersecurity threats to the organization. The
 257 company then uses the NIST PRAM [6] to perform a privacy risk assessment. Appendix F and G describe
 258 these risk assessments in more detail. These risk assessments produce two significant conclusions:

- 259 1. Great Seneca Accounting finds similar cybersecurity threats in its environment and problematic
260 data actions for employee privacy as those discussed in NIST SP 1800-22, validating that the
261 controls discussed in the example solution are relevant to their environment.
- 262 2. The organization determines that it has a high-impact system, based on the impact guidance in
263 NIST FIPS 200, *Minimum Security Requirements for Federal Information and Information Systems*
264 [9], and needs to implement more controls beyond those identified in NIST SP 1800-22 and its
265 Target Profiles to support the additional system components in its own solution (e.g., underlying
266 OS, the data center where the equipment will reside).

267 5.4 Great Seneca Accounting Tailors Their Security and Privacy Control 268 Baselines

269 As part of their review of NIST FIPS 200 [9], Great Seneca Accounting selects the high controls baseline in
270 NIST SP 800-53 [10] for their BYOD architecture implementation. They then tailor the control baselines
271 based on the needs identified through the priority Subcategories in its cybersecurity and privacy Target
272 Profiles.

273 Control baselines are tailored to meet their organization’s needs. NIST SP 800-53 [10] defines tailoring as
274 “The process by which security control baselines are modified by: (i) identifying and designating
275 common controls; (ii) applying scoping considerations on the applicability and implementation of
276 baseline controls; (iii) selecting compensating security controls; (iv) assigning specific values to
277 organization-defined security control parameters; (v) supplementing baselines with additional security
278 controls or control enhancements; and (vi) providing additional specification information for control
279 implementation.”

280 While not discussed in this example scenario, Great Seneca also plans to make tailoring decisions based
281 on other unique needs in its environment (e.g., legal and regulatory requirements).

282 5.4.1 An Example Tailoring of the System and Communications Protection Security 283 Control Family

284 As Great Seneca Accounting reviews the System and Communications Protection (SC) control family in
285 NIST SP 800-53 [10], it notes there are opportunities for tailoring.

286 For example, the NIST SP 800-53 baseline includes control enhancements, whereas the Cybersecurity
287 Framework Informative References contain only base controls. Great Seneca Accounting decides to
288 implement the enhancements that are applicable to a high-impact system for the SC controls they have
289 selected.

290 Using this decision as a guide, Great Seneca Accounting also makes the following tailoring decisions
291 related to the NIST SP 800-53 SC control family:

- 292 ■ NIST SP 800-53 provides recommendations regarding implementation priorities for controls. The
293 implementation priorities of controls related to some Cybersecurity Framework Subcategories

294 were adjusted to be higher or lower based on their alignment with Subcategory prioritization in
 295 the Target Profile.

296 ■ For example, the implementation priority for Cybersecurity Framework Subcategory DE.CM-5
 297 was identified as having low or moderate importance for accomplishing all four BYOD-Related
 298 Business/Mission Objectives. NIST SP 800-53 designates control SC-18, which supports the
 299 implementation of Cybersecurity Framework Subcategory DE.CM-5, as high priority. However,
 300 since Cybersecurity Framework Subcategory DE.CM-5 is moderate or low priority in this context,
 301 Great Seneca makes a tailoring decision to lower the implementation priority for the SC-18 NIST
 302 SP 800-53 control to moderate.

303 ○ DE.CM-5’s importance designations for accomplishing the BYOD-Related
 304 Business/Mission Objectives are highlighted in green in [Figure 5-4](#).

305 **Figure 5-4 Subcategory DE.CM-5 Mapping to BYOD-Related Business/Mission Objectives**

Cybersecurity Framework Core			BYOD-Related Business/Mission Objectives			
Function	Category	Subcategory	(1) Provide Good Data Stewardship	(2) Enable Workforce Flexibility	(3) Provide Innovative Financial Services	(4) Enable Workforce Flexibility
DETECT	Security Continuous Monitoring	DE.CM-5: Unauthorized mobile code is detected.	moderate	moderate	moderate	low

306

307 ■ Conversely, just as the implementation priority for the NIST SP 800-53 control that supports
 308 implementation of Subcategory DC-CM-5 was lowered based on the Target Profile, the
 309 implementation priority for the NIST SP 800-53 controls that supports implementation of
 310 Cybersecurity Framework Subcategory PR.AC-5 was raised. This is because Subcategory PR.AC-5
 311 was identified as having high importance for accomplishing all four BYOD-Related
 312 Business/Mission Objectives.

313 ○ The NIST SP 800-53 SC Family security control related to the Cybersecurity Framework
 314 Subcategory PR.AC-5 is SC-7. NIST SP 800-53 prioritizes control SC-7 as low. Since control
 315 SC-7 supports the implementation of a Cybersecurity Framework Subcategory that is
 316 designated as high priority in Great Seneca’s Target Profile (Cybersecurity Framework
 317 Subcategory PR.AC-5), Great Seneca makes a tailoring decision to increase the priority of
 318 NIST SP 800-53 control SC-7 to high.

319 ○ PR.AC-5’s high importance designation for accomplishing the BYOD-Related
 320 Business/Mission Objectives are highlighted in green in [Figure 5-5](#). All Subcategory
 321 prioritizations (including PR.AC-5’s shown below) can be found in [Table 3-1](#).

322 Figure 5-5 Subcategory PR.AC-5 Mapping to BYOD-Related Business/Mission Objectives

Cybersecurity Framework Core			BYOD-Related Business/Mission Objectives			
Function	Category	Subcategory	(1) Provide Good Data Stewardship	(2) Enable Workforce Flexibility	(3) Provide Innovative Financial Services	(4) Enable Workforce Flexibility
PROTECT	Identity Management and Access Control	PR.AC-5: Network integrity is protected (e.g., network segregation, network segmentation).	high	high	high	high

323

324 Great Seneca Accounting follows the same approach for the privacy controls in NIST SP 800-53, using
 325 the Privacy Framework Target Profile and controls identified through its PRAM analysis (for more
 326 information reference [Appendix G](#)).

327 Great Seneca Accounting will evaluate the security controls as they come up for review under its
 328 continuous monitoring program to determine whether there are enhancements to the implemented
 329 security controls that can be made over time.

330 In addition to identifying controls to select, the priorities articulated in Target Profiles will also help
 331 Great Seneca Accounting decide how to align financial resources for controls implementation (e.g.,
 332 buying a tool to automate a control as opposed to relying on policy and procedures alone). The Target
 333 Profiles will help Great Seneca identify how robustly to re-assess the efficacy of implemented controls
 334 before new system components or capabilities are enabled in a production environment. Great Seneca
 335 will also be able to use the Target Profiles to help evaluate the residual risks of the architecture in the
 336 context of Great Seneca Accounting’s business/mission objectives, and the frequency and depth of
 337 continued monitoring requirements over time.

338 **Note:** All of the tailoring decisions discussed above are for example purposes only. An organization’s
 339 actual tailoring decision will be based upon their own unique business/mission objectives, risk
 340 assessment results, and organizational needs that may significantly vary from these examples.

341 **Appendix A List of Acronyms**

BYOD	Bring Your Own Device
FIPS	Federal Information Processing Standards
NCCoE	National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence
NIST	National Institute of Standards and Technology
PII	Personally Identifiable Information
PRAM	Privacy Risk Assessment Methodology
RMF	Risk Management Framework
SP	Special Publication

342 **Appendix B** **Glossary**

Access Management	Access Management is the set of practices that enables only those permitted the ability to perform an action on a particular resource. The three most common Access Management services you encounter every day perhaps without realizing it are: Policy Administration, Authentication, and Authorization [11].
Availability	Ensure that users can access resources through remote access whenever needed [12].
Bring Your Own Device (BYOD)	A non-organization-controlled telework client device [12].
Confidentiality	Ensure that remote access communications and stored user data cannot be read by unauthorized parties [12].
Data Actions	System operations that process PII [13].
Disassociability	Enabling the processing of PII or events without association to individuals or devices beyond the operational requirements of the system [13].
Eavesdropping	An attack in which an Attacker listens passively to the authentication protocol to capture information which can be used in a subsequent active attack to masquerade as the Claimant [14] (definition located under eavesdropping attack).
Firewall	Firewalls are devices or programs that control the flow of network traffic between networks or hosts that employ differing security postures [15].
Integrity	Detect any intentional or unintentional changes to remote access communications that occur in transit [12].
Manageability	Providing the capability for granular administration of PII including alteration, deletion, and selective disclosure [13].
Mobile Device	A portable computing device that: (i) has a small form factor such that it can easily be carried by a single individual; (ii) is designed to operate without a physical connection (e.g., wirelessly transmit or receive information); (iii) possesses local, non-removable or removable data storage; and (iv) includes a self-contained power source. Mobile devices may also include voice communication capabilities, on-board sensors that allow the devices to capture information, and/or built-in features for

synchronizing local data with remote locations. Examples include smart phones, tablets, and E-readers [10].

Personally Identifiable Information (PII)

Any information about an individual maintained by an agency, including any information that can be used to distinguish or trace an individual's identity, such as name, Social Security number, date and place of birth, mother's maiden name, or biometric records; and any other information that is linked or linkable to an individual, such as medical, educational, financial, and employment information [16] (adapted from Government Accountability Office Report 08-536).

Problematic Data Action

A data action that could cause an adverse effect for individuals [2].

Threat

Any circumstance or event with the potential to adversely impact organizational operations (including mission, functions, image, or reputation), organizational assets, individuals, other organizations, or the Nation through an information system via unauthorized access, destruction, disclosure, or modification of information, and/or denial of service [8].

Vulnerability

Weakness in an information system, system security procedures, internal controls, or implementation that could be exploited by a threat source [8].

343 Appendix C References

- 344 [1] National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST). *NIST Framework for Improving Critical*
345 *Infrastructure Cybersecurity*, Version 1.1 (Cybersecurity Framework). Apr. 16, 2018. [Online].
346 Available: <https://www.nist.gov/cyberframework>.
- 347 [2] NIST. *NIST Privacy Framework: A Tool for Improving Privacy Through Enterprise Risk*
348 *Management*, Version 1.0 (Privacy Framework). Jan. 16, 2020. [Online]. Available:
349 <https://www.nist.gov/privacy-framework>.
- 350 [3] W. Newhouse et al., *National Initiative for Cybersecurity Education (NICE) Cybersecurity*
351 *Workforce Framework*, NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-181, NIST, Gaithersburg, Md., Aug.
352 2017. Available: <https://csrc.nist.gov/publications/detail/sp/800-181/final>.
- 353 [4] NIST. Risk Management Framework (RMF) Overview. [Online]. Available:
354 [https://csrc.nist.gov/projects/risk-management/risk-management-framework-\(rmf\)-overview](https://csrc.nist.gov/projects/risk-management/risk-management-framework-(rmf)-overview).
- 355 [5] NIST. Mobile Threat Catalogue. [Online]. Available: [https://pages.nist.gov/mobile-threat-](https://pages.nist.gov/mobile-threat-catalogue/)
356 [catalogue/](https://pages.nist.gov/mobile-threat-catalogue/).
- 357 [6] NIST. NIST Privacy Risk Assessment Methodology. Jan. 16, 2020. [Online]. Available:
358 <https://www.nist.gov/privacy-framework/nist-pram>.
- 359 [7] Joint Task Force, *Risk Management Framework for Information Systems and Organizations: A*
360 *System Life Cycle Approach for Security and Privacy*, NIST SP 800-37 Revision 2, NIST,
361 Gaithersburg, Md., Dec. 2018. Available: [https://csrc.nist.gov/publications/detail/sp/800-](https://csrc.nist.gov/publications/detail/sp/800-37/rev-2/final)
362 [37/rev-2/final](https://csrc.nist.gov/publications/detail/sp/800-37/rev-2/final).
- 363 [8] Joint Task Force Transformation Initiative, *Guide for Conducting Risk Assessments*, NIST SP 800-
364 30 Revision 1, NIST, Gaithersburg, Md., Sept. 2012. Available:
365 <https://csrc.nist.gov/publications/detail/sp/800-30/rev-1/final>.
- 366 [9] NIST. *Minimum Security Requirements for Federal Information and Information Systems*, Federal
367 Information Processing Standards Publication (FIPS) 200, Mar. 2006. Available:
368 <https://csrc.nist.gov/publications/detail/fips/200/final>.
- 369 [10] Joint Task Force Transformation Initiative, *Security and Privacy Controls for Information Systems*
370 *and Organizations*, NIST SP 800-53 Revision 5, NIST, Gaithersburg, Md., Sept. 2020. Available:
371 <https://nvlpubs.nist.gov/nistpubs/SpecialPublications/NIST.SP.800-53r5.pdf>.
- 372 [11] IDManagement.gov. "Federal Identity, Credential, and Access Management Architecture."
373 [Online]. Available: <https://arch.idmanagement.gov/services/access/>.

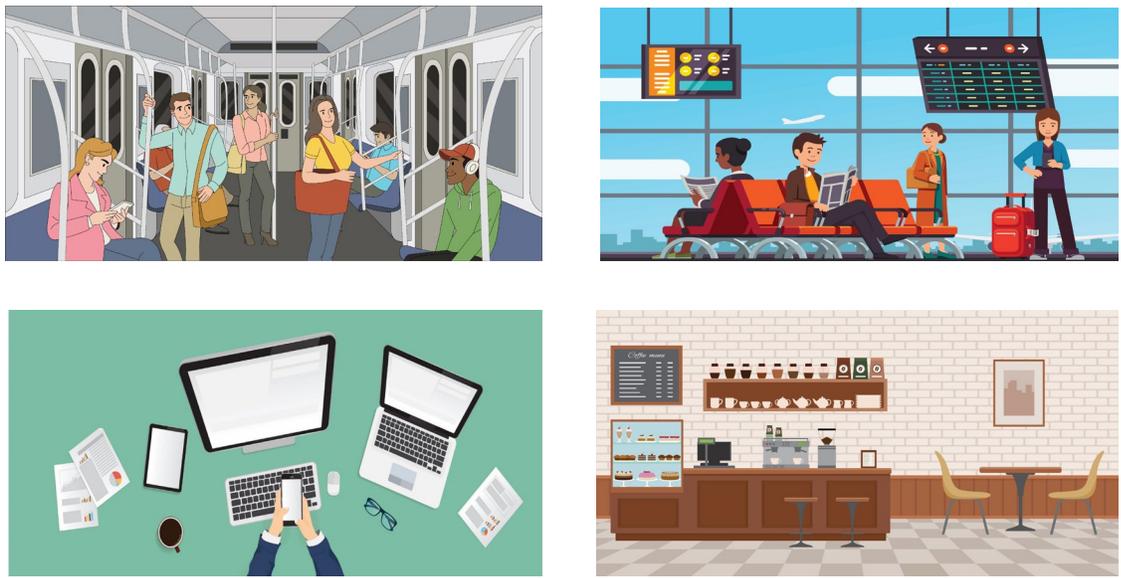
- 374 [12] M. Souppaya and K. Scarfone, *Guide to Enterprise Telework, Remote Access, and Bring Your Own*
375 *Device (BYOD) Security*, NIST SP 800-46 Revision 2, NIST, Gaithersburg, Md., July 2016. Available:
376 <https://csrc.nist.gov/publications/detail/sp/800-46/rev-2/final>.
- 377 [13] S. Brooks et al., *An Introduction to Privacy Engineering and Risk Management in Federal*
378 *Systems*, NIST Interagency or Internal Report 8062, Gaithersburg, Md., Jan. 2017. Available:
379 <https://nvlpubs.nist.gov/nistpubs/ir/2017/NIST.IR.8062.pdf>.
- 380 [14] P. Grassi et al., *Digital Identity Guidelines*, NIST SP 800-63-3, NIST, Gaithersburg, Md., June 2017.
381 Available: <https://nvlpubs.nist.gov/nistpubs/SpecialPublications/NIST.SP.800-63-3.pdf>.
- 382 [15] K. Stouffer et al., *Guide to Industrial Control Systems (ICS) Security*, NIST SP 800-82 Revision 2,
383 NIST, Gaithersburg, Md., May 2015. Available:
384 <https://nvlpubs.nist.gov/nistpubs/SpecialPublications/NIST.SP.800-82r2.pdf>.
- 385 [16] E. McCallister et al., *Guide to Protecting the Confidentiality of Personally Identifiable Information*
386 *(PII)*, NIST SP 800-122, NIST, Gaithersburg, Md., Apr. 2010. Available:
387 <https://nvlpubs.nist.gov/nistpubs/Legacy/SP/nistspecialpublication800-122.pdf>.
- 388 [17] J. Franklin et al., *Mobile Device Security: Corporate-Owned Personally-Enabled (COPE)*, NIST SP
389 1800-21, NIST, Gaithersburg, Md., July 22, 2019. Available:
390 <https://csrc.nist.gov/News/2019/NIST-Releases-Draft-SP-1800-21-for-Comment>.
- 391 [18] NIST, NIST Interagency Report (NISTIR) 8170, *Approaches for Federal Agencies to Use the*
392 *Cybersecurity Framework*, Mar. 2020. [Online]. Available:
393 <https://nvlpubs.nist.gov/nistpubs/ir/2020/NIST.IR.8170.pdf>.
- 394 [19] NIST. Risk Management Framework (RMF) Overview. [Online]. Available:
395 [https://csrc.nist.gov/projects/risk-management/risk-management-framework-\(rmf\)-overview](https://csrc.nist.gov/projects/risk-management/risk-management-framework-(rmf)-overview).

396 **Appendix D A Note Regarding Great Seneca Accounting**

397 A description of a fictional organization, Great Seneca Accounting, was included in the National Institute
398 of Standards and Technology (NIST) Special Publication (SP) 1800-22 Mobile Device Security: Bring Your
399 Own Device (BYOD) Practice Guide.

400 This fictional organization demonstrates how a small-to-medium sized, regional organization imple-
401 mented the example solution in this practice guide to assess and protect their mobile-device-specific
402 security and privacy needs. It illustrates how organizations with office-based, remote-working, and trav-
403 elling personnel can be supported in their use of personally owned devices that enable their employees
404 to work while on the road, in the office, at customer locations, and at home.

405 **Figure D-1 Great Seneca Accounting’s Work Environments**



406 **Appendix E How Great Seneca Accounting Applied NIST Risk** 407 **Management Methodologies**

408 This practice guide contains an example scenario about a fictional organization called Great Seneca
409 Accounting. The example scenario shows how to deploy a Bring Your Own Device (BYOD) solution to be
410 in alignment with an organization’s security and privacy capabilities and objectives.

411 The example scenario uses National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) standards, guidance,
412 and tools. It is provided in the *Example Scenario: Putting Guidance into Practice* supplement of this
413 practice guide.

414 This appendix provides a brief description of some of the key NIST tools referenced in the example
415 scenario supplement of this practice guide.

416 In this Appendix, Section E.1 provides descriptions of the risk frameworks and tools, along with a high-
417 level discussion of how Great Seneca Accounting applied each framework or tool in the example
418 scenario. Section E.2 describes how the *NIST Cybersecurity Framework* and *NIST Privacy Framework* can
419 be used to establish or improve cybersecurity and privacy programs.

420 **E.1 Overview of Risk Frameworks and Tools That Great Seneca Used**

421 Great Seneca used NIST frameworks and tools to identify common security and privacy risks related to
422 BYOD solutions and to guide approaches to how they were addressed in the architecture described in
423 Section 4. Great Seneca used additional standards and guidance, listed in Appendix D of Volume B, to
424 complement these frameworks and tools when designing their BYOD architecture.

425 Both the Cybersecurity Framework and Privacy Framework include the concept of Framework Profiles,
426 which identify the organization’s existing activities (contained in a Current Profile) and articulate the
427 desired outcomes that support its mission and business objectives within its risk tolerance (that are
428 contained in the Target Profile). When considered together, Current and Target Profiles are useful tools
429 for identifying gaps and for strategic planning.

430 **E.1.1 Overview of the NIST Cybersecurity Framework**

431 **Description:** The NIST Cybersecurity Framework “is voluntary guidance, based on existing standards,
432 guidelines, and practices for organizations to better manage and reduce cybersecurity risk. In addition to
433 helping organizations manage and reduce risks, it was designed to foster risk and cybersecurity
434 management communications amongst both internal and external organizational stakeholders.” [17]

435 **Application:** This guide refers to two of the main components of the Cybersecurity Framework: the
436 Framework Core and the Framework Profiles. As described in Section 2.1 of the Cybersecurity
437 Framework, the Framework Core provides a set of activities to achieve specific cybersecurity outcomes,

438 and reference examples of guidance to achieve those outcomes (e.g., controls found in NIST Special
439 Publication [SP] 800-53). Section 2.3 of the Cybersecurity Framework identifies Framework Profiles as
440 the alignment of the Functions, Categories, and Subcategories (i.e., the Framework Core) with the
441 business requirements, risk tolerance, and resources of the organization.

442 The Great Seneca Accounting example scenario assumed that the organization used the Cybersecurity
443 Framework Core and Framework Profiles, specifically the Target Profiles, to align cybersecurity
444 outcomes and activities with its overall business/mission objectives for the organization. In the case of
445 Great Seneca Accounting, its Cybersecurity Framework Target Profile helps program owners and system
446 architects understand business and mission-driven priorities and the types of cybersecurity capabilities
447 needed to achieve them. Great Seneca Accounting also used the NIST Interagency Report (NISTIR) 8170,
448 *The Cybersecurity Framework, Implementation Guidance for Federal Agencies* [18], for guidance in using
449 the NIST Cybersecurity Framework.

450 E.1.2 Overview of the NIST Privacy Framework

451 **Description:** The *NIST Privacy Framework* is a voluntary enterprise risk management tool intended to
452 help organizations identify and manage privacy risk and build beneficial products and services while
453 protecting individuals' privacy. It follows the structure of the Cybersecurity Framework to facilitate using
454 both frameworks together [2].

455 **Application:** This guide refers to two of the main components of the Privacy Framework: the Framework
456 Core and Framework Profiles. As described in Section 2.1 of the Privacy Framework, the Framework
457 Core provides an increasingly granular set of activities and outcomes that enable dialog about managing
458 privacy risk as well as resources to achieve those outcomes (e.g., guidance in NISTIR 8062, *An*
459 *Introduction to Privacy Engineering and Risk Management in Federal Systems* [13]). Section 2.2 of the
460 Privacy Framework identifies Framework Profiles as the selection of specific Functions, Categories, and
461 Subcategories from the core that an organization has prioritized to help it manage privacy risk.

462 Great Seneca Accounting used the Privacy Framework as a strategic planning tool for its privacy program
463 as well as its system, product, and service teams. The Great Seneca Accounting example scenario
464 assumed that the organization used the Privacy Framework Core and Framework Profiles, specifically
465 Target Profiles, to align privacy outcomes and activities with its overall business/mission objectives for
466 the organization. Its Privacy Framework Target Profile helped program owners and system architects to
467 understand business and mission-driven priorities and the types of privacy capabilities needed to
468 achieve them.

469 E.1.3 Overview of the NIST Risk Management Framework

470 **Description:** The NIST Risk Management Framework (RMF) “provides a process that integrates security
471 and risk management activities into the system development life cycle. The risk-based approach to
472 security control selection and specification considers effectiveness, efficiency, and constraints due to

473 applicable laws, directives, Executive Orders, policies, standards, or regulations” [19]. Two of the key
474 documents that describe the RMF are NIST SP 800-37 Revision 2, *Risk Management Framework for*
475 *Information Systems and Organizations: A System Life Cycle Approach for Security and Privacy*; and NIST
476 SP 800-30, *Guide for Conducting Risk Assessments*.

477 **Application:** The RMF has seven steps: Prepare, Categorize, Select, Implement, Assess, Authorize, and
478 Monitor. These steps provide a method for organizations to characterize the risk posture of their
479 information and systems and identify controls that are commensurate with the risks in the system’s
480 environment. They also support organizations with selecting beneficial implementation and assessment
481 approaches, reasoning through the process to understand residual risks, and monitoring the efficacy of
482 implemented controls over time.

483 The Great Seneca Accounting example solution touches on the risk assessment activities conducted
484 under the *Prepare* step, identifying the overall risk level of the BYOD system architecture in the
485 *Categorize* step, and, consistent with example approach 8 in NISTIR 8170, reasoning through the
486 controls that are necessary in the *Select* step. The influence of the priorities provided in Great Seneca
487 Accounting’s Cybersecurity Framework Target Profile is also briefly mentioned regarding making
488 decisions for how to apply controls during *Implement* (e.g., policy versus tools), how robustly to verify
489 and validate controls during *Assess* (e.g., document review versus “hands on the keyboard” system
490 testing), and the degree of evaluation required over time as part of the *Monitor* step.

491 E.1.4 Overview of the NIST Privacy Risk Assessment Methodology

492 **Description:** The NIST Privacy Risk Assessment Methodology (PRAM) is a tool for analyzing, assessing,
493 and prioritizing privacy risks to help organizations determine how to respond and select appropriate
494 solutions. A blank version of the PRAM is available for download on NIST’s website.

495 **Application:** The PRAM uses the privacy risk model and privacy engineering objectives described in
496 NISTIR 8062 to analyze for potential problematic data actions. Data actions are any system operations
497 that process data. Processing can include, collection, retention, logging, analysis, generation,
498 transformation or merging, disclosure, transfer, and disposal of data. A problematic data action is one
499 that could cause an adverse effect, or problem, for individuals. The occurrence or potential occurrence
500 of problematic data actions is a privacy event. While there is a growing body of technical privacy
501 controls, including those found in NIST SP 800-53, applying the PRAM may result in identifying controls
502 that are not yet available in common standards. This makes it an especially useful tool for managing
503 risks that may otherwise go unaddressed.

504 The Great Seneca Accounting example solution assumed that a PRAM was used to identify problematic
505 data actions and mitigating controls for employees. The controls in this build include some technical
506 controls, such as controls that can be handled by security capabilities, as well as policy and procedure-
507 level controls that need to be implemented outside yet supported by the system.

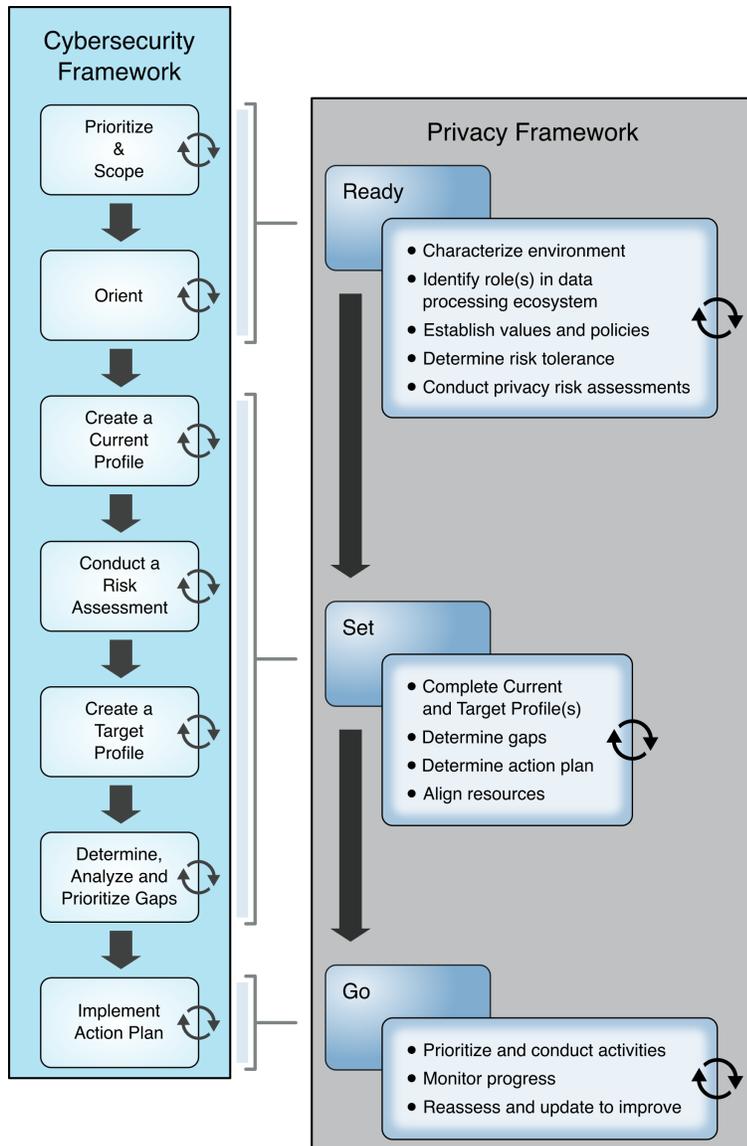
508 E.2 Using Frameworks to Establish or Improve Cybersecurity and Privacy 509 Programs

510 While their presentation differs, the NIST Cybersecurity Framework and *NIST Privacy Framework* also
511 both provide complementary guidance for establishing and improving cybersecurity and privacy
512 programs. The NIST Cybersecurity Framework's process for establishing or improving programs provides
513 seven steps that an organization could use iteratively and as necessary throughout the program's life
514 cycle to continually improve its cybersecurity posture:

- 515 ▪ Step 1: Prioritize and scope the organization's mission.
- 516 ▪ Step 2: Orient its cybersecurity program activities to focus efforts on applicable areas.
- 517 ▪ Step 3: Create a current profile of what security areas it currently supports.
- 518 ▪ Step 4: Conduct a risk assessment.
- 519 ▪ Step 5: Create a Target Profile of the security areas that the organization would like to improve
520 in the future.
- 521 ▪ Step 6: Determine, analyze, and prioritize cybersecurity gaps.
- 522 ▪ Step 7: Implement an action plan to close those gaps.

523 The *NIST Privacy Framework* includes the same types of activities for establishing and improving privacy
524 programs, described in a three-stage Ready, Set, Go model. Figure E-1 below shows a comparison of
525 these two approaches, demonstrating their close alignment.

526 Figure E-1 Comparing Framework Processes to Establish or Improve Programs



527 Both approaches are equally effective. Regardless of the approach selected, an organization begins with
 528 orienting around its business/mission objectives and high-level organizational priorities and carry out
 529 the remaining activities in a way that makes the most sense for the organization. The organization
 530 repeats these steps as necessary throughout the program’s life cycle to continually improve its risk
 531 posture.

532 **Appendix F How Great Seneca Accounting Used the NIST** 533 **Risk Management Framework**

534 This practice guide contains an example scenario about a fictional organization called Great Seneca
535 Accounting. The example scenario shows how to deploy a Bring Your Own Device (BYOD) solution to be
536 in alignment with an organization’s security and privacy capabilities and objectives.

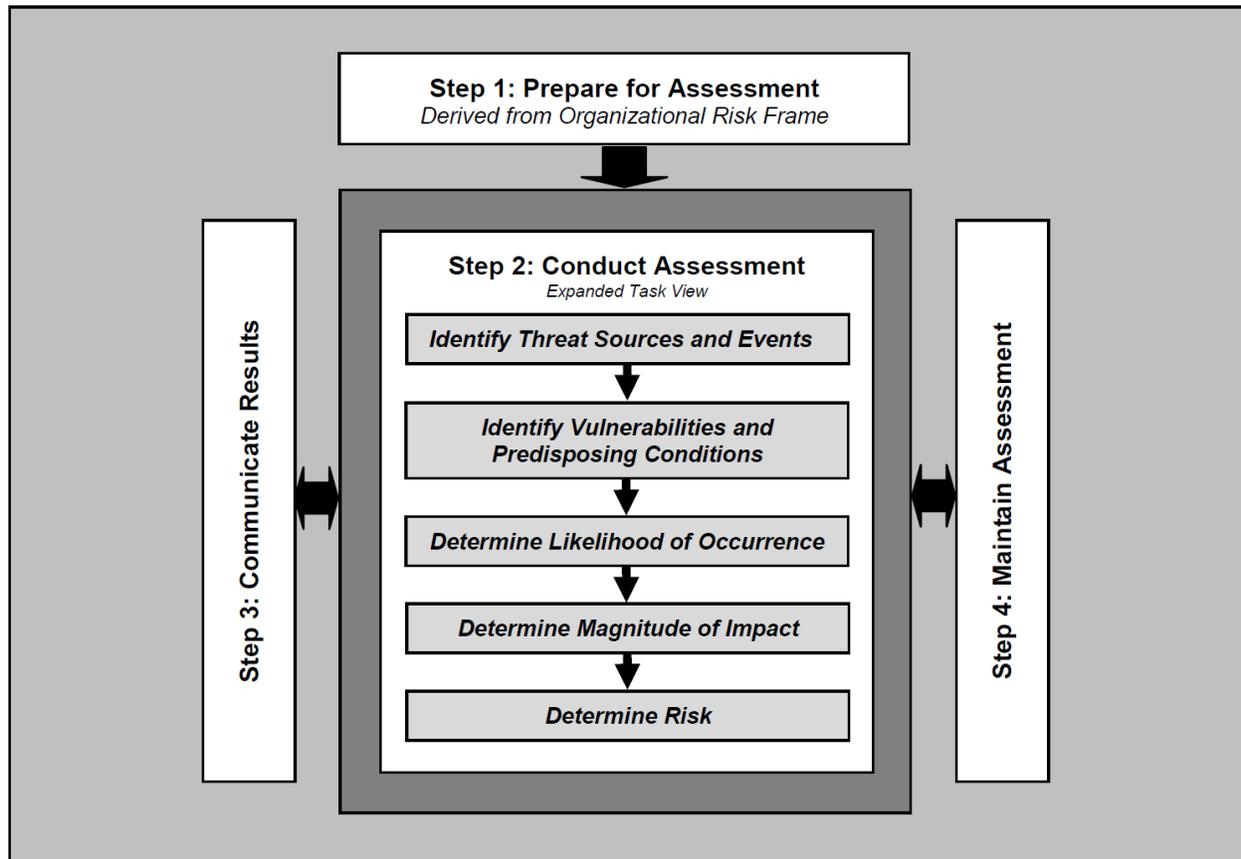
537 The example scenario uses National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) standards, guidance,
538 and tools. It is provided in the *Example Scenario: Putting Guidance into Practice* supplement of this
539 practice guide.

540 In the example scenario supplement of this practice guide, Great Seneca Accounting decided to use the
541 NIST Cybersecurity Framework, the *NIST Privacy Framework*, and the NIST Risk Management Framework
542 to help improve its mobile device architecture. The following material provides information about how
543 Great Seneca Accounting used the NIST Risk Management Framework to improve its BYOD deployment.

544 **F.1 Understanding the Risk Assessment Process**

545 This section provides information on the risk assessment process employed to improve the mobile
546 security posture of Great Seneca Accounting. Typically, a risk assessment based on NIST SP 800-30
547 Revision 1 follows a four-step process as shown in [Figure F-1](#): prepare for assessment, conduct
548 assessment, communicate results, and maintain assessment.

549 Figure F-1 Risk Assessment Process



550 **F.2 Risk Assessment of Great Seneca Accounting’s BYOD Program**

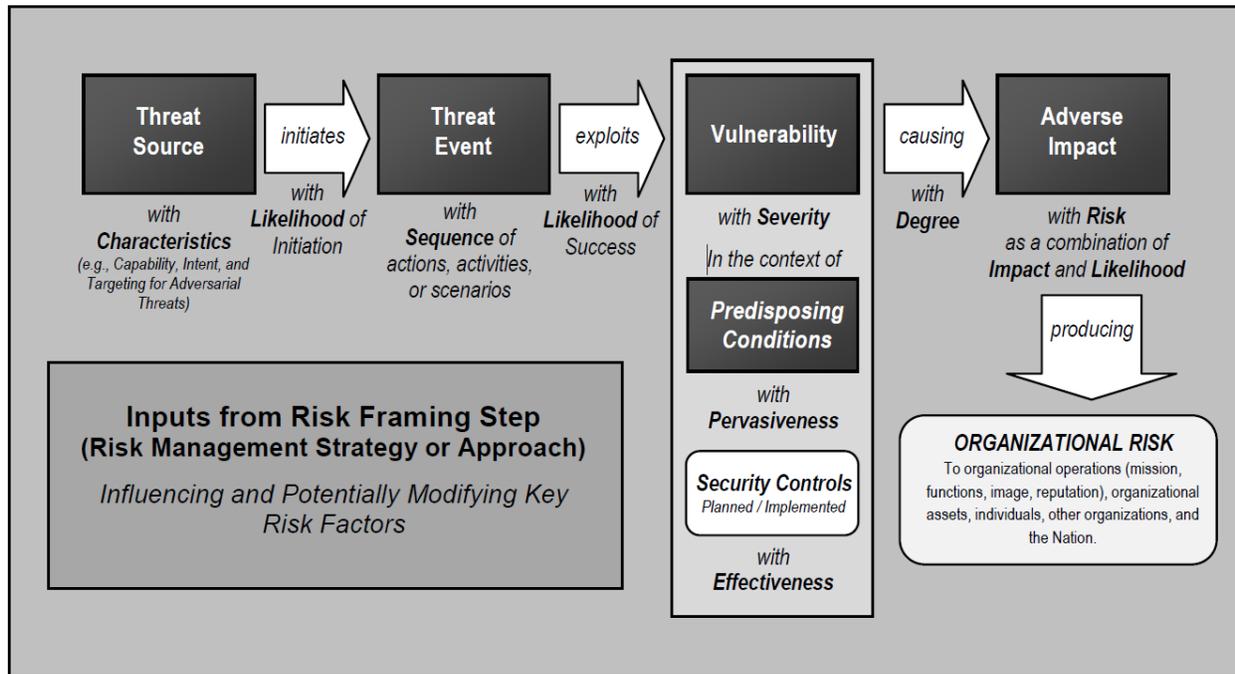
551 This risk assessment is scoped to Great Seneca Accounting’s mobile deployment, which includes the
 552 mobile devices used to access Great Seneca Accounting’s enterprise resources, along with any
 553 information technology components used to manage or provide services to those mobile devices.

554 Risk assessment assumptions and constraints were developed by using a NIST SP 800-30 Revision 1
 555 generic risk model as shown in Figure F-2 to identify the following components of the risk assessment:

- 556 ▪ threat sources
- 557 ▪ threat events
- 558 ▪ vulnerabilities
- 559 ▪ predisposing conditions
- 560 ▪ security controls

- 561 ▪ adverse impacts
- 562 ▪ organizational risks

563 **Figure F-2 NIST SP 800-30 Generic Risk Model**



564 **F.3 Development of Threat Event Descriptions**

565 Great Seneca Accounting developed threat event tables based on NIST SP 800-30 Revision 1 and used
 566 those to help analyze the sources of mobile threats. Using this process, Great Seneca Accounting
 567 leadership identified the following potential mobile device threat events that are described in the
 568 following subsections.

569 **A note about selection of the threat events:**

570 This practice guide’s example solution helps protect organizations from the threat events shown in [Table](#)
 571 [F-1](#). A mapping of these threat events to the NIST Mobile Threat Catalogue is provided in [Table F-2](#).

572 **Table F-1 Great Seneca Accounting's BYOD Deployment Threats**

Great Seneca Accounting's Threat Event Identification Number	Threat Event Description
TE-1	privacy-intrusive applications
TE-2	account credential theft through phishing
TE-3	malicious applications
TE-4	outdated phones
TE-5	camera and microphone remote access
TE-6	sensitive data transmissions
TE-7	brute-force attacks to unlock a phone
TE-8	protection against weak password practices
TE-9	protection against unmanaged devices
TE-10	protection against lost or stolen data
TE-11	protecting data from being inadvertently backed up to a cloud service
TE-12	protection against sharing personal identification number (PIN) or password

573 Great Seneca Accounting's 12 threat events and their mapping to the NIST Mobile Threat Catalogue [5]
574 are shown in [Table F-2](#).

575 **Table F-2 Threat Event Mapping to the Mobile Threat Catalogue**

Great Seneca Accounting's Threat Event Identification Number	NIST Mobile Threat Catalogue Threat ID
TE-1	APP-2, APP-12
TE-2	AUT-9
TE-3	APP-2, APP-5, APP-31, APP-40, APP-32, AUT-10
TE-4	APP-4, APP-26, STA-0, STA-9, STA-16
TE-5	APP-32, APP-36

Great Seneca Accounting's Threat Event Identification Number	NIST Mobile Threat Catalogue Threat ID
TE-6	APP-0, CEL-18, LPN-2
TE-7	AUT-2, AUT-4
TE-8	APP-9, AUT-0
TE-9	EMM-5
TE-10	PHY-0
TE-11	EMM-9
TE-12	AUT-0, AUT-2, AUT-4, AUT-5

576 **F.4 Great Seneca Accounting's Leadership and Technical Teams Discuss** 577 **BYOD's Potential Threats to Their Organization**

578 Great Seneca Accounting's leadership team wanted to understand real-world examples of each threat
579 event and what the risk was for each. Great Seneca Accounting's leadership and technical teams then
580 discussed those possible threats that BYOD could introduce to their organization.

581 The analysis performed by Great Seneca Accounting's technical team included analyzing the likelihood
582 of each threat, the level of impact, and the threat level that the BYOD deployment would pose. The
583 following are leadership's questions and the technical team's responses regarding BYOD threats during
584 that discussion using real-world examples. A goal of the example solution contained within this practice
585 guide is to mitigate the impact of these threat events. Reference [Table 5-1](#) for a listing of the technology
586 that addresses each of the following threat events.

587 **F.4.1 Threat Event 1**

588 **What happens if an employee installs risky applications?**

589 A mobile application can attempt to collect and exfiltrate any information to which it has been granted
590 access. This includes any information generated during use of the application (e.g., user input), user-
591 granted permissions (e.g., contacts, calendar, call logs, photos), and general device data available to any
592 application (e.g., International Mobile Equipment Identity, device make and model, serial number).
593 Further, if a malicious application exploits a vulnerability in other applications, the operating system
594 (OS), or device firmware to achieve privilege escalation, it may gain unauthorized access to any data
595 stored on or otherwise accessible through the device.

596 **Risk assessment analysis:**

597 Overall likelihood: very high

598 *Justification:* Employees have access to download any application at any time. If an employee requires
599 an application that provides a desired function, the employee can download that application from any
600 available source (trusted or untrusted) that provides a desired function. If an application performs an
601 employee’s desired function, the employee may download an application from an untrusted source
602 and/or disregard granted privacy permissions.

603 Level of impact: high

604 *Justification:* Employees may download an application from an untrusted source and/or disregard
605 granted privacy permissions. This poses a threat for sensitive corporate data, as some applications may
606 include features that could access corporate data, unbeknownst to the user.

607 **BYOD-specific threat:** In a BYOD scenario, users are still able to download and install applications at
608 their leisure. This capability allows users to unintentionally side-load or install a malicious application
609 that may harm the device or the enterprise information on the device.

610 **F.4.2 Threat Event 2**

611 **Can account information be stolen through phishing?**

612 Malicious actors may create fraudulent websites that mimic the appearance and behavior of legitimate
613 ones and entice users to authenticate to them by distributing phishing messages over short message
614 service (SMS) or email. Effective social engineering techniques such as impersonating an authority figure
615 or creating a sense of urgency may compel users to forgo scrutinizing the message and proceed to
616 authenticate to the fraudulent website; it then captures and stores the user’s credentials before
617 (usually) forwarding them to the legitimate website to allay suspicion.

618 **Risk assessment analysis:**

619 Overall likelihood: very high

620 *Justification:* Phishing campaigns are a very common threat that occurs almost every day.

621 Level of impact: high

622 *Justification:* A successful phishing campaign could provide the malicious actor with corporate
623 credentials, allowing access to sensitive corporate data; or personal credentials that could lead to
624 compromise of corporate data or infrastructure via other means.

625 **BYOD-specific threat:** The device-level controls applied to personal devices do not inhibit a user’s
626 activities. This allows the user to access personal/work messages and emails on their device that could

627 be susceptible to phishing attempts. If the proper controls are not applied to a user's enterprise
628 messages and email, successful phishing attempts could allow an attacker unauthorized access to
629 enterprise data.

630 F.4.3 Threat Event 3

631 **How much risk do malicious applications pose to Great Seneca Accounting?**

632 Malicious actors may send users SMS or email messages that contain a uniform resource locator (URL)
633 where a malicious application is hosted. Generally, such messages are crafted using social engineering
634 techniques designed to dissuade recipients from scrutinizing the nature of the message, thereby
635 increasing the likelihood that they access the URL using their mobile device. If they do, it will attempt to
636 download and install the application. Effective use of social engineering by the attacker will further
637 compel an otherwise suspicious user to grant any trust required by the developer and all permissions
638 requested by the application. Granting the former facilitates installation of other malicious applications
639 by the same developer, and granting the latter increases the potential for the application to do direct
640 harm.

641 **Risk assessment analysis:**

642 Overall likelihood: high

643 *Justification:* Installation of malicious applications via URLs is less common than other phishing attempts.
644 The process for side-loading applications requires much more user input and consideration (e.g.,
645 trusting the developer certificate) than standard phishing, which solely requests a username and
646 password. A user may proceed through sideloading an application to acquire a desired capability from
647 an application.

648 Level of impact: high

649 *Justification:* Once a user installs a malicious side-loaded application, an adversary could gain full access
650 to a mobile device, and therefore access to corporate data and credentials, without the user's
651 knowledge.

652 **BYOD-specific threat:** Like Threat Event 1, BYOD deployments may have fewer restrictions to avoid
653 preventing the user from performing desired personal functions. This increases the attack surface for
654 malicious actors to take advantage.

655 F.4.4 Threat Event 4

656 **What happens when outdated phones access Great Seneca Accounting's network?**

657 When malware successfully exploits a code execution vulnerability in the mobile OS or device drivers,
658 the delivered code generally executes with elevated privileges and issues commands in the context of

659 the root user or the OS kernel. This may be enough for some malicious actors to accomplish their goal,
660 but those that are advanced will usually attempt to install additional malicious tools and to establish a
661 persistent presence. If successful, the attacker will be able to launch further attacks against the user, the
662 device, or any other systems to which the device connects. As a result, any data stored on, generated
663 by, or accessible to the device at that time – or in the future – may be compromised.

664 **Risk assessment analysis:**

665 Overall likelihood: high

666 *Justification:* Many public vulnerabilities specific to mobile devices have been seen over the years. In
667 these, users can jailbreak iOS devices and root Android devices to download third-party applications and
668 apply unique settings/configurations that the device would not typically be able to apply/access.

669 Level of impact: high

670 *Justification:* Exploiting a vulnerability allows circumventing security controls and modifying protected
671 device data that should not be modified. Jailbroken and rooted devices exploit kernel vulnerabilities and
672 allow third-party applications/services root access that can also be used to bypass security controls that
673 are built in or applied to a mobile device.

674 **BYOD-specific threat:** As with any device, personal devices are susceptible to device exploitation if not
675 properly used or updated.

676 **F.4.5 Threat Event 5**

677 **Can Great Seneca Accounting stop someone from turning on a camera or microphone?**

678 Malicious actors with access (authorized or unauthorized) to device sensors (microphone, camera,
679 gyroscope, Global Positioning System receiver, and radios) can use them to conduct surveillance. It may
680 be directed at the user, as when tracking the device location, or it may be applied more generally, as
681 when recording any nearby sounds. Captured sensor data may be immediately useful to a malicious
682 actor, such as a recording of an executive meeting. Alternatively, the attacker may analyze the data in
683 isolation or in combination with other data to yield sensitive information. For example, a malicious actor
684 can use audio recordings of on-device or proximate activity to probabilistically determine user inputs to
685 touchscreens and keyboards, essentially turning the device into a remote keylogger.

686 **Risk assessment analysis:**

687 Overall likelihood: very high

688 *Justification:* This has been seen on public application stores, with applications allegedly being used for
689 data-collection. As mentioned in Threat Event 1, unbeknownst to the user, a downloaded application
690 may be granted privacy intrusive permissions that allow access to device sensors.

691 Level of impact: high

692 *Justification:* When the sensors are being misused, the user is typically not alerted. This allows collection
693 of sensitive enterprise data, such as location, without knowledge of the user.

694 **BYOD-specific threat:** Applications commonly request access to these sensors. In a BYOD deployment,
695 the enterprise does not have control over what personal applications the user installs on their device.
696 These personal applications may access sensors on the device and eavesdrop on a user's enterprise-
697 related activities (e.g., calls and meetings).

698 F.4.6 Threat Event 6

699 **Is sensitive information protected when the data travels between the employee's mobile device and**
700 **Great Seneca Accounting's network?**

701 Malicious actors can readily eavesdrop on communication over unencrypted, wireless networks such as
702 public Wi-Fi access points, which coffee shops and hotels commonly provide. While a device is
703 connected to such a network, a malicious actor could gain unauthorized access to any data sent or
704 received by the device for any session that has not already been protected by encryption at either the
705 transport or application layers. Even if the transmitted data were encrypted, an attacker would be privy
706 to the domains, internet protocol (IP) addresses, and services (as indicated by port numbers) to which
707 the device connects; an attacker could use such information in future watering hole or person-in-the-
708 middle attacks against the device user.

709 Additionally, visibility into network-layer traffic enables a malicious actor to conduct side-channel
710 attacks against the network's encrypted messages, which can still result in a loss of confidentiality.
711 Further, eavesdropping on unencrypted messages during a handshake to establish an encrypted session
712 with another host or endpoint may facilitate attacks that ultimately compromise the security of the
713 session.

714 **Risk assessment analysis:**

715 Overall likelihood: moderate

716 *Justification:* Unlike installation of an application, installations of enterprise mobility management
717 (EMM)/mobile device management (MDM), network, virtual private network (VPN) profiles, and
718 certificates require additional effort and understanding from the user to properly implement.

719 Level of impact: very high

720 *Justification:* If malicious actor can install malicious configuration profiles or certificates, they would be
721 able to perform actions such as decrypting network traffic and possibly even control the device.

722 **BYOD-specific threat:** Like Threat Event 2, personal devices may not have the benefit of an always-on
723 device-wide VPN. This leaves application communications at the discretion of the developer.

724 F.4.7 Threat Event 7

725 **Is Great Seneca Accounting’s data protected from brute-force PIN attacks?**

726 A malicious actor may be able to obtain a user’s device unlock code by direct observation, side-channel
727 attacks, or brute-force attacks. Both the first and second can be attempted with at least proximity to the
728 device; only the third technique requires physical access. However, applications with access to any
729 peripherals that detect sound or motion (microphone, gyroscope, or accelerometer) can attempt side-
730 channel attacks that infer the unlock code by detecting taps and swipes to the screen. Once the device
731 unlock code has been obtained, a malicious actor with physical access to the device will gain immediate
732 access to any data or functionality not already protected by additional access control mechanisms.
733 Additionally, if the user employs the device unlock code as a credential to any other systems, the
734 malicious actor may further gain unauthorized access to those systems.

735 **Risk assessment analysis:**

736 Overall likelihood: moderate

737 *Justification:* Unlike shoulder-surfing to observe a user’s passcode, brute-force attacks are not as
738 common or successful due to the built-in deterrent mechanisms. These mechanisms include exponential
739 back-off/lockout period and device wipes after a certain number of failed unlock attempts.

740 Level of impact: very high

741 *Justification:* If a malicious actor can successfully unlock a device without the user’s permission, they
742 could have full control over the user’s corporate account and thus gain unauthorized access to corporate
743 data.

744 **BYOD-specific threat:** Because BYODs are prone to travel (e.g., vacations, restaurants, and other
745 nonwork locations), the risk that the device’s passcode is obtained increases due to the heightened
746 exposure to threats in different environments.

747 F.4.8 Threat Event 8

748 **Can Great Seneca Accounting protect its data from weak password practices?**

749 If a malicious actor gains unauthorized access to a mobile device, they also have access to the data and
750 applications on that mobile device. The mobile device may contain an organization’s in-house
751 applications that a malicious actor can subsequently use to gain access to sensitive data or backend
752 services. This could result from weaknesses or vulnerabilities present in the authentication or credential
753 storage mechanisms implemented within an in-house application.

754 **Risk assessment analysis:**

755 Overall likelihood: moderate

756 *Justification:* Often applications include hardcoded credentials for the default password of the admin
757 account. Default passwords are readily available online. The user might not change these passwords to
758 allow access and eliminate the need to remember a password.

759 Level of impact: high

760 *Justification:* Successful extraction of the credentials allows an attacker to gain unauthorized access to
761 enterprise data.

762 **BYOD-specific threat:** The risk of hardcoded credentials residing in an application on the device is the
763 same for any mobile device deployment scenario.

764 **F.4.9 Threat Event 9**

765 **Can unmanaged devices connect to Great Seneca Accounting?**

766 An employee who accesses enterprise resources from an unmanaged mobile device may expose the
767 enterprise to vulnerabilities that may compromise enterprise data. Unmanaged devices do not benefit
768 from any security mechanisms deployed by the organization such as mobile threat defense, mobile
769 threat intelligence, application vetting services, and mobile security policies. These unmanaged devices
770 limit an organization's visibility into the state of a mobile device, including if a malicious actor
771 compromises the device. Therefore, users who violate security policies to gain unauthorized access to
772 enterprise resources from such devices risk providing malicious actors with access to sensitive
773 organizational data, services, and systems.

774 **Risk assessment analysis:**

775 Overall likelihood: very high

776 *Justification:* This may occur accidentally when an employee attempts to access their email or other
777 corporate resources.

778 Level of impact: high

779 *Justification:* Unmanaged devices pose a sizable security risk because the enterprise has no visibility into
780 their security or risk postures of the mobile devices. Due to this lack of visibility, a compromised device
781 may allow an attacker to attempt to exfiltrate sensitive enterprise data.

782 **BYOD-specific threat:** The risk of an unmanaged mobile device accessing the enterprise is the same for
783 any mobile deployment scenario.

784 **F.4.10 Threat Event 10**

785 **Can Great Seneca Accounting protect its data when a phone is lost or stolen?**

786 Due to the nature of the small form factor of mobile devices, they can be misplaced or stolen. A
787 malicious actor who gains physical custody of a device with inadequate security controls may be able to
788 gain unauthorized access to sensitive data or resources accessible to the device.

789 **Risk assessment analysis:**

790 Overall likelihood: very high

791 *Justification:* Mobile devices are small and can be misplaced. Enterprise devices may be lost or stolen at
792 the same frequency as personally owned devices.

793 Level of impact: high

794 *Justification:* Similar to Threat Event 9, if a malicious actor can gain access to the device, they could
795 access sensitive corporate data.

796 **BYOD-specific threat:** Due to the heightened mobility of BYODs, they are more prone to being
797 accidentally lost or stolen.

798 **F.4.11 Threat Event 11**

799 **Can data be protected from unauthorized cloud services?**

800 If employees violate data management policies by using unmanaged services to store sensitive
801 organizational data, the data will be placed outside organizational control, where the organization can
802 no longer protect its confidentiality, integrity, or availability. Malicious actors who compromise the
803 unauthorized service account or any system hosting that account may gain unauthorized access to the
804 data.

805 Further, storage of sensitive data in an unmanaged service may subject the user or the organization to
806 prosecution for violation of any applicable laws (e.g., exportation of encryption) and may complicate
807 efforts by the organization to achieve remediation or recovery from any future losses, such as those
808 resulting from public disclosure of trade secrets.

809 **Risk assessment analysis:**

810 Overall likelihood: high

811 *Justification:* This could occur either intentionally or accidentally (e.g., taking a screenshot and having
812 pictures backed up to an unmanaged cloud service).

813 Level of impact: high

814 *Justification:* Storage in unmanaged services presents a risk to the confidentiality and availability of
815 corporate data because the corporation would no longer control it.

816 **BYOD-specific threat:** In a BYOD deployment, employees are more likely to have some backup or
817 automated cloud storage solution configured on their device, which may lead to unintentional backup of
818 enterprise data.

819 F.4.12 Threat Level 12

820 **Can Great Seneca Accounting protect its data from PIN or password sharing?**

821 Many individuals choose to share the PIN or password to unlock their personal device with family
822 members. This creates a scenario where a nonemployee can access the device, the work applications,
823 and therefore the work data.

824 **Risk assessment analysis:**

825 Overall likelihood: moderate

826 *Justification:* Even though employees are conditioned almost constantly to protect their work
827 passwords, personal device PINs and passwords are not always protected with that same level of
828 security. Anytime individuals share a password or PIN, there is increased risk that it might be exposed or
829 compromised.

830 Level of impact: very high

831 *Justification:* If a malicious actor can bypass a device lock and gain access to the device, they can
832 potentially access sensitive corporate data.

833 **BYOD-specific threat:** The passcode of an individual's personal mobile device is more likely to be shared
834 among family and/or friends to provide access to applications (e.g., games). Although sharing passcodes
835 may be convenient for personal reasons, this increases the risk of an unauthorized individual gaining
836 access to enterprise data through a personal device.

837 F.5 Identification of Vulnerabilities and Predisposing Conditions

838 In this section we identify vulnerabilities and predisposing conditions that increase the likelihood that
839 identified threat events will result in adverse impacts for Great Seneca Accounting. We list each
840 vulnerability or predisposing condition in [Table F-3](#), along with the corresponding threat events and
841 ratings of threat pervasiveness. More details on threat event ratings can be found in Appendix Section
842 [F.3](#).

843 **Table F-3 Identify Vulnerabilities and Predisposing Conditions**

Vulnerability ID	Vulnerability or Predisposing Condition	Resulting Threat Events	Pervasiveness
VULN-1	Email and other enterprise resources can be accessed from anywhere, and only username/password authentication is required.	TE-2, TE-9, TE-10	very high
VULN-2	Public Wi-Fi networks are regularly used by employees for remote connectivity from their mobile devices.	TE-6	very high
VULN-3	No EMM/MDM deployment exists to enforce and monitor compliance with security-relevant policies on mobile devices.	TE-1, TE-3, TE-4, TE-5, TE-6, TE-7, TE-8, TE-9, TE-10, TE-11, TE-12	very high

844 **F.6 Summary of Risk Assessment Findings**

845 [Table F-4](#) summarizes the risk assessment findings. More detail about the methodology used to rate
846 overall likelihood, level of impact, and risk is in the Appendix Section [F.3](#).

847 **Table F-4 Summary of Risk Assessment Findings**

Threat Event	Vulnerabilities, Predisposing Conditions	Overall Likelihood	Level of Impact	Risk
TE-1: unauthorized access to sensitive information via a malicious or privacy-intrusive application	VULN-3	very high	high	high
TE-2: theft of credentials through an SMS or email phishing campaign	VULN-1	very high	high	high
TE-3: malicious applications installed via URLs in SMS or email messages	VULN-3	high	high	high

Threat Event	Vulnerabilities, Predisposing Conditions	Overall Likelihood	Level of Impact	Risk
TE-4: confidentiality and integrity loss due to exploitation of known vulnerability in the OS or firmware	VULN-3	high	high	high
TE-5: violation of privacy via misuse of device sensors	VULN-3	very high	high	high
TE-6: loss of confidentiality of sensitive information via eavesdropping on unencrypted device communications	VULN-2, VULN-3	moderate	very high	high
TE-7: compromise of device integrity via observed, inferred, or brute-forced device unlock code	VULN-3	moderate	very high	high
TE-8: unauthorized access to backend services via authentication or credential storage vulnerabilities in internally developed applications	VULN-3	moderate	high	high
TE-9: unauthorized access of enterprise resources from an unmanaged and potentially compromised device	VULN-1, VULN-3	very high	high	high
TE-10: loss of organizational data due to a lost or stolen device	VULN-1, VULN-3	very high	high	high
TE-11: loss of confidentiality of organizational data due to its unauthorized storage in non-organizationally managed services	VULN-3	high	high	high
TE-12: unauthorized access to work applications via bypassed lock screen	VULN-3	moderate	very high	high

848 **Note 1:** Risk is stated in qualitative terms based on the scale in Table I-2 of Appendix I in NIST SP 800-30
849 Revision 1 [8].

850 **Note 2:** The risk rating is derived from both the overall likelihood and level of impact using Table I-2 of
851 Appendix I in NIST SP 800-30 Revision 1 [8]. Because these are modified interval scales, the combined
852 overall risk ratings from Table I-2 do not always reflect a strict mathematical average of these two
853 variables. The table above demonstrates this where levels of moderate weigh more heavily than other
854 ratings.

855 **Note 3:** Ratings of risk relate to the probability and level of adverse effect on organizational operations,
856 organizational assets, individuals, other organizations, or the nation. Per NIST SP 800-30 Revision 1,
857 adverse effects (and the associated risks) range from negligible (i.e., very low risk), limited (i.e., low),
858 serious (i.e., moderate), severe or catastrophic (i.e., high), to multiple severe or catastrophic (i.e., very
859 high).

860 Appendix G How Great Seneca Accounting Used the NIST 861 Privacy Risk Assessment Methodology

862 This practice guide contains an example scenario about a fictional organization called Great Seneca
863 Accounting. The example scenario shows how to deploy a Bring Your Own Device (BYOD) solution to be
864 in alignment with an organization's security and privacy capabilities and objectives.

865 The example scenario uses National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) standards, guidance,
866 and tools. It is provided in the *Example Scenario: Putting Guidance into Practice* supplement of this
867 practice guide.

868 In the example scenario, Great Seneca Accounting decided to use the NIST Privacy Risk Assessment
869 Methodology (PRAM) to conduct a privacy risk assessment and help improve the company's mobile
870 device architecture. The PRAM helps an organization analyze and communicate about how it conducted
871 its data processing to achieve business/mission objectives.

872 At Great Seneca Accounting, the PRAM helped elucidate how enabling employees to use their personal
873 devices for work-related functions can present privacy concerns for individuals. The PRAM also supports
874 the risk assessment task in the Prepare step of the NIST Risk Management Framework as discussed in
875 Appendix section E.1. The privacy events that were identified are below, along with potential
876 mitigations.

877 G.1 Problematic Data Action 1: Unwarranted restriction through blocking 878 access and wiping devices

879 **Data Action:** Devices can be wiped and reset to factory settings based on inputs regarding anomalous
880 activity and untrusted applications.

881
882 **Potential Problem for Individuals:** In a BYOD environment, employees are likely to use their devices for
883 both personal and work-related purposes; thus, in a system that features robust security information
884 and event management capable of wiping a device entirely, there could be an issue of employees losing
885 personal data and employees may not even expect that this is a possibility. A hypothetical example is
886 that a Great Seneca Accounting employee stores personal photos on their mobile device, but these
887 photos are lost when their device is wiped after anomalous activity is detected.

888 **Mitigations:**

889 **Block access to corporate resources by removing device from mobile device management (MDM)
890 control instead of wiping devices.**

891 As an alternative to wiping data entirely, section F.4.3, Threat Event 3, discusses blocking a device from
892 accessing enterprise resources until an application is removed. Temporarily blocking access ensures that

893 an individual will not lose personal data through a full wipe of a device. This approach may help bring
894 the system’s capabilities into alignment with employees’ expectations about what can happen to their
895 devices, especially if they are unaware that devices can be wiped by administrators—providing greater
896 predictability in the system.

897 Related mitigation: If this mitigation approach is taken, the organization may also wish to consider
898 establishing and communicating these remediation processes to employees. It is important to have a
899 clear remediation process in place to help employees regain access to resources on their devices at the
900 appropriate time. It is also important to clearly convey this remediation process to employees. A
901 remediation process provides greater manageability in the system supporting employees’ ability to
902 access resources. If well communicated to employees, this also provides greater predictability as
903 employees will know the steps to regain access.

904 **Enable only selective wiping of corporate resources on the device.**

905 An alternative mitigation option for wiping device data is to limit what can be wiped. International
906 Business Machines’ (IBM’s) MaaS360 can be configured to selectively wipe instead of performing a full
907 factory reset. When configured this way, a wipe preserves employees’ personal configurations,
908 applications, and data while removing only the corporate configurations, applications, and data.
909 However, on Android, a selective wipe will preserve restrictions imposed via policy on the device. To
910 fully remove MDM control, the Remove Work Profile action must be used.

911 **Advise employees to back up the personal data maintained on devices.**

912 If device wiping remains an option for administrators, encourage employees to perform regular backups
913 of their personal data to ensure it remains accessible in case of a wipe.

914 **Restrict staff access to system capabilities that permit removing device access or performing wipes.**

915 Limit staff with the ability to perform a wipe to only those with that responsibility by using role-based
916 access controls. This can help decrease the chances of accidentally removing employee data or blocking
917 access to resources.

918 **G.2 Problematic Data Action 2: Employee surveillance**

919 **Data Action:** The assessed infrastructure offers Great Seneca Accounting and its employees a number of
920 security capabilities, including reliance on comprehensive monitoring capabilities, as noted in Section 4,
921 Architecture. Multiple parties could collect and analyze a significant amount of data relating to employ-
922 ees, their devices, and their activities.

923

924 **Potential Problem for Individuals:** Employees may not be aware that the organization has the ability to
925 monitor their interactions with the system and may not want this monitoring to occur. Collection and
926 analysis of information might enable Great Seneca Accounting or other parties to craft a narrative about

927 an employee based on the employee’s interactions with the system, which could lead to a power
928 imbalance between Great Seneca Accounting and the employee and loss of trust in the employer if the
929 employee discovers monitoring that they did not anticipate.

930 **Mitigations:**

931 **Restrict staff access to system capabilities that permit reviewing data about employees and their**
932 **devices.**

933 This may be achieved using role-based access controls. Access can be limited to any dashboard in the
934 system containing data about employees and their devices but is most sensitive for the MaaS360
935 dashboard, which is the hub for data about employees, their devices, and threats. Minimizing access to
936 sensitive information can enhance disassociability for employees using the system.

937 **Limit or disable collection of specific data elements.**

938 Conduct a system-specific privacy risk assessment to determine what elements can be limited. In the
939 configuration of MaaS360, location services and application inventory collection may be disabled. iOS
940 devices can be configured in MaaS360 to collect only an inventory of applications that have been
941 installed through the corporate application store instead of all applications installed on the device.

942 While these administrative configurations may help provide disassociability in the system, there are also
943 some opportunities for employees to limit the data collected. Employees can choose to disable location
944 services in their device OS to prevent collection of location data. MaaS360 can also be configured to
945 provide employees with the ability to manage their own devices through the IBM User Portal.

946 Each of these controls contributes to limiting the number of attributes regarding employees and their
947 devices that is collected, which can impede administrators’ ability to associate information with specific
948 individuals.

949 **Dispose of personally identifiable information (PII).**

950 Disposing of PII after an appropriate retention period can help reduce the risk of entities building
951 profiles of individuals. Disposal can also help bring the system’s data processing into alignment with
952 employees’ expectations and reduce the security risk associated with storing a large volume of PII.
953 Disposal may be particularly important for certain parties in the system that collect a larger volume of
954 data or more sensitive data. Disposal may be achieved using a combination of policy and technical
955 controls. Parties in the system may identify what happens to data, when, and how frequently.

956 **G.3 Problematic Data Action 3: Unanticipated revelations through data** 957 **sharing across parties**

958 **Data Action:** The infrastructure involves several parties that serve different purposes supporting Great
959 Seneca Accounting’s security objectives. As a result, device usage information could flow across various
960 parties.

961
962 **Potential Problems for Individuals:** This transmission among a variety of different parties could be
963 confusing for employees who might not know who has access to information about them. If
964 administrators and co-workers know which colleagues are conducting activity on their device that
965 triggers security alerts, employees could be embarrassed by its disclosure. Information being revealed
966 and associated with specific employees could also lead to stigmatization and even impact Great Seneca
967 Accounting upper management in its decision-making regarding the employee. Further, clear text
968 transmissions could leave information vulnerable to attackers and therefore to unanticipated release of
969 employee information.

970 **Mitigations:**

971 **De-identify personal and device data when such data is not necessary to meet processing objectives.**

972 De-identifying data helps decrease the chances that a third party is aggregating information pertaining
973 to one individual. While de-identification can help reduce privacy risk, there are residual risks of re-
974 identification.

975 **Encrypt data transmitted between parties.**

976 Encryption reduces the risk of compromise of information transmitted between parties. MaaS360
977 encrypts all communications over the internet with Transport Layer Security.

978 **Limit or disable access to data.**

979 Conduct a system-specific privacy risk assessment to determine how access to data can be limited. Using
980 access controls to limit staff access to compliance information, especially when associated with
981 individuals, can be important in preventing association of specific events with particular employees.

982 **Limit or disable collection of specific data elements.**

983 Conduct a system-specific privacy risk assessment to determine what elements can be limited. MaaS360
984 can be configured to limit collection of application and location data. Further, instead of collecting a list
985 of all the applications installed on the device, MaaS360 can collect only the list of those applications that
986 were installed through the corporate application store (called “managed applications”). This would
987 prevent insight into the employees’ applications that employees downloaded for personal use.
988 Zimperium provides privacy policies that can be configured to collect or not collect data items when
989 certain events occur.

990 **Use contracts to limit third-party data processing.**

991 Establish contractual policies to limit data processing by third parties to only the processing that
992 facilitates delivery of security services and to no data processing beyond those explicit purposes.

993 **G.4 Mitigations Applicable Across Various Data Actions**

994 Several mitigations benefit employees in all three data actions identified in the privacy risk assessment.
995 The following training and support mitigations can help Great Seneca Accounting appropriately inform
996 employees about the system and its data processing.

997 **Mitigations:**

998 **Train employees about the system, parties involved, data processing, and actions that administrators**
999 **can take.**

1000 Training sessions can also highlight any privacy-preserving techniques used, such as for disclosures to
1001 third parties. Training should include confirmation from employees that they understand the actions
1002 that administrators can take on their devices and their consequences—whether this is blocking access or
1003 wiping data. Employees may also be informed of data retention periods and when their data will be
1004 deleted. This can be more effective than sharing a privacy notice, which research has shown, individuals
1005 are unlikely to read. Still, MaaS360 should also be configured to provide employees with access to a
1006 visual privacy policy, which describes what device information is collected and why, as well as what
1007 actions administrators can take on the device. This enables employees to make better informed
1008 decisions while using their devices, and it enhances predictability.

1009 **Provide ongoing notifications or reminders about system activity.**

1010 This can be achieved using notifications to help directly link administrative actions on devices to relevant
1011 threats and to also help employees understand why an action is being taken. MaaS360 also notifies
1012 employees when changes are made to the privacy policy or MDM profile settings. These notifications
1013 can help increase system predictability by setting employee expectations appropriately regarding the
1014 way the system processes data and the resulting actions.

1015 **Provide a support point of contact.**

1016 By providing employees with a point of contact in the organization who can respond to inquiries and
1017 concerns regarding the system, employees can better understand how the system processes their data,
1018 which enhances predictability.

1019 **G.5 Privacy References for Example Solution Technologies**

1020 Additional privacy information on the example solution's technologies appears below.

1021 Table G-1 Privacy References for the Example Solution Technologies

Commercially Available Product	Mobile Security Technology	Product Privacy Information Location
<p>IBM MaaS360 Mobile Device Management (SaaS) Version 10.73</p> <p>IBM MaaS360 Mobile Device Management Agent Version 3.91.5 (iOS), 6.60 (Android)</p> <p>IBM MaaS360 Cloud Extender / Cloud Extender Modules</p>	mobile device management	<p>https://www.ibm.com/support/pages/node/1093156?mhsrc=ibm-search_a&mhq=maas360%20privacy</p> <p>https://www.ibm.com/support/pages/node/571227</p> <p>https://www.ibm.com/support/knowledge-center/SS8H2S/com.ibm.mc.doc/pag_source/tasks/pag_sec_privacy.htm</p> <p>http://public.dhe.ibm.com/software/security/products/maas360/GDPR/</p>
Kryptowire Cloud Service	application vetting	https://www.kryptowire.com
<p>Palo Alto Networks PA-VM-100 Version 9.0.1</p> <p>Palo Alto Networks GlobalProtect VPN Client Version 5.0.6-14 (iOS), 5.0.2-6 (Android)</p>	virtual private network (VPN) and firewall/filtering	<p>https://docs.paloaltonetworks.com/globalprotect/8-0/globalprotect-admin/host-information/about-host-information/what-data-does-the-globalprotect-agent-collect#</p> <p>https://www.paloaltonetworks.com/resources/datasheets/url-filtering-privacy-datasheet</p>
Qualcomm (Version is mobile device dependent)	trusted execution environment	https://www.qualcomm.com/media/documents/files/guard-your-data-with-the-qualcomm-snap-dragon-mobile-platform.pdf
<p>Zimperium Defense Suite</p> <p>Zimperium Console Version vGA-4.23.1</p> <p>Zimperium zIPS Agent Version 4.9.2 (Android and iOS)</p>	mobile threat defense	https://www.zimperium.com/mobile-app-protection

NIST SPECIAL PUBLICATION 1800-22C

Mobile Device Security: Bring Your Own Device (BYOD)

**Volume C:
How-To Guides**

**Kaitlin Boeckl
Nakia Grayson
Gema Howell
Naomi Lefkovitz**

Applied Cybersecurity Division
Information Technology Laboratory

**Jason G. Ajmo
Milissa McGinnis*
Kenneth F. Sandlin
Oksana Slivina
Julie Snyder
Paul Ward**

The MITRE Corporation
McLean, VA

**Former employee; all work for this publication done while at employer.*

March 2021

DRAFT

This publication is available free of charge from
<https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/projects/building-blocks/mobile-device-security/bring-your-own-device>



1 **DISCLAIMER**

2 Certain commercial entities, equipment, products, or materials may be identified by name or company
3 logo or other insignia in this document in order to acknowledge their participation in this collaboration
4 or to describe an experimental procedure or concept adequately. Such identification is not intended to
5 imply recommendation or endorsement by NIST or NCCoE, neither is it intended to imply that the
6 entities, equipment, products, or materials are necessarily the best available for the purpose.

7 National Institute of Standards and Technology Special Publication 1800-22B Natl. Inst. Stand. Technol.
8 Spec. Publ. 1800-22C, 61 pages, (March 2021), CODEN: NSPUE2

9 **FEEDBACK**

10 You can improve this guide by contributing feedback. As you review and adopt this solution for your
11 own organization, we ask you and your colleagues to share your experience and advice with us.

12 Comments on this publication may be submitted to: mobile-nccoe@nist.gov.

13 Public comment period: March 18, 2021 through May 03, 2021

14 All comments are subject to release under the Freedom of Information Act (FOIA).

15 National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence
16 National Institute of Standards and Technology
17 100 Bureau Drive
18 Mailstop 2002
19 Gaithersburg, MD 20899
20 Email: nccoe@nist.gov

21 **NATIONAL CYBERSECURITY CENTER OF EXCELLENCE**

22 The National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence (NCCoE), a part of the National Institute of Standards
23 and Technology (NIST), is a collaborative hub where industry organizations, government agencies, and
24 academic institutions work together to address businesses' most pressing cybersecurity issues. This
25 public-private partnership enables the creation of practical cybersecurity solutions for specific
26 industries, as well as for broad, cross-sector technology challenges. Through consortia under
27 Cooperative Research and Development Agreements (CRADAs), including technology partners—from
28 Fortune 50 market leaders to smaller companies specializing in information technology security—the
29 NCCoE applies standards and best practices to develop modular, easily adaptable example cybersecurity
30 solutions using commercially available technology. The NCCoE documents these example solutions in
31 the NIST Special Publication 1800 series, which maps capabilities to the NIST Cyber Security Framework
32 and details the steps needed for another entity to recreate the example solution. The NCCoE was
33 established in 2012 by NIST in partnership with the State of Maryland and Montgomery County, Md.

34 To learn more about the NCCoE, visit <https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/>. To learn more about NIST, visit
35 <https://www.nist.gov>.

36 **NIST CYBERSECURITY PRACTICE GUIDES**

37 NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guides (Special Publication Series 1800) target specific cybersecurity
38 challenges in the public and private sectors. They are practical, user-friendly guides that facilitate the
39 adoption of standards-based approaches to cybersecurity. They show members of the information
40 security community how to implement example solutions that help them align with relevant standards
41 and best practices, and provide users with the materials lists, configuration files, and other information
42 they need to implement a similar approach.

43 The documents in this series describe example implementations of cybersecurity practices that
44 businesses and other organizations may voluntarily adopt. These documents do not describe regulations
45 or mandatory practices, nor do they carry statutory authority.

46 **ABSTRACT**

47 Bring Your Own Device (BYOD) refers to the practice of performing work-related activities on personally
48 owned devices. This practice guide provides an example solution demonstrating how to enhance
49 security and privacy in Android and Apple smartphone BYOD deployments.

50 Incorporating BYOD capabilities into an organization can provide greater flexibility in how employees
51 work and increase the opportunities and methods available to access organizational resources. For some
52 organizations, the combination of traditional in-office processes with mobile device technologies
53 enables portable communication approaches and adaptive workflows. For others, it fosters a mobile-

54 first approach in which their employees communicate and collaborate primarily using their mobile
55 devices.

56 However, some of the features that make BYOD mobile devices increasingly flexible and functional also
57 present unique security and privacy challenges to both work organizations and device owners. The
58 unique nature of these challenges is driven by the diverse range of devices available that vary in type,
59 age, operating system (OS), and the level of risk posed.

60 Enabling BYOD capabilities in the enterprise introduces new cybersecurity risks to organizations.
61 Solutions that are designed to secure corporate devices and on-premises data do not provide an
62 effective cybersecurity solution for BYOD. Finding an effective solution can be challenging due to the
63 unique risks that BYOD deployments impose. Additionally, enabling BYOD capabilities introduces new
64 privacy risks to employees by providing their employer a degree of access to their personal devices,
65 opening up the possibility of observation and control that would not otherwise exist.

66 To help organizations benefit from BYOD's flexibility while protecting themselves from many of its
67 critical security and privacy challenges, this Practice Guide provides an example solution using
68 standards-based, commercially available products and step-by-step implementation guidance.

69 **KEYWORDS**

70 *Bring your own device; BYOD; mobile device management; mobile device security.*

71 **ACKNOWLEDGMENTS**

72 We are grateful to the following individuals for their generous contributions of expertise and time.

Name	Organization
Donna Dodson*	NIST
Joshua M. Franklin*	NIST
Jeff Greene	NIST
Natalia Martin	NIST
William Newhouse	NIST
Murugiah Souppaya	NIST

Name	Organization
Kevin Stine	NIST
Chris Brown	The MITRE Corporation
Nancy Correll	The MITRE Corporation
Spike E. Dog	The MITRE Corporation
Sallie Edwards	The MITRE Corporation
Parisa Grayeli	The MITRE Corporation
Marisa Harriston	The MITRE Corporation
Karri Meldorf	The MITRE Corporation
Erin Wheeler	The MITRE Corporation
Dr. Behnam Shariati	University of Maryland, Baltimore County
Jeffrey Ward	IBM
Cesare Coscia	IBM
Chris Gogoel	Kryptowire
Tom Karygiannis	Kryptowire
Jeff Lamoureaux	Palo Alto Networks
Sean Morgan	Palo Alto Networks

Name	Organization
Kabir Kasargod	Qualcomm
Viji Raveendran	Qualcomm
Mikel Draghici	Zimperium

73 *Former employee; all work for this publication done while at employer.

74 The Technology Partners/Collaborators who participated in this build submitted their capabilities in
 75 response to a notice in the Federal Register. Respondents with relevant capabilities or product
 76 components were invited to sign a Cooperative Research and Development Agreement (CRADA) with
 77 NIST, allowing them to participate in a consortium to build this example solution. We worked with:

Technology Partner/Collaborator	Build Involvement
IBM	Mobile Device Management
Kryptowire	Application Vetting
Palo Alto Networks	Firewall; Virtual Private Network
Qualcomm	Trusted Execution Environment
Zimperium	Mobile Threat Defense

78 DOCUMENT CONVENTIONS

79 The terms “shall” and “shall not” indicate requirements to be followed strictly to conform to the
 80 publication and from which no deviation is permitted. The terms “should” and “should not” indicate that
 81 among several possibilities, one is recommended as particularly suitable without mentioning or
 82 excluding others, or that a certain course of action is preferred but not necessarily required, or that (in
 83 the negative form) a certain possibility or course of action is discouraged but not prohibited. The terms

84 “may” and “need not” indicate a course of action permissible within the limits of the publication. The
85 terms “can” and “cannot” indicate a possibility and capability, whether material, physical, or causal.

86 **CALL FOR PATENT CLAIMS**

87 This public review includes a call for information on essential patent claims (claims whose use would be
88 required for compliance with the guidance or requirements in this Information Technology Laboratory
89 (ITL) draft publication). Such guidance and/or requirements may be directly stated in this ITL Publication
90 or by reference to another publication. This call also includes disclosure, where known, of the existence
91 of pending U.S. or foreign patent applications relating to this ITL draft publication and of any relevant
92 unexpired U.S. or foreign patents.

93 ITL may require from the patent holder, or a party authorized to make assurances on its behalf, in writ-
94 ten or electronic form, either:

95 a) assurance in the form of a general disclaimer to the effect that such party does not hold and does not
96 currently intend holding any essential patent claim(s); or

97 b) assurance that a license to such essential patent claim(s) will be made available to applicants desiring
98 to utilize the license for the purpose of complying with the guidance or requirements in this ITL draft
99 publication either:

- 100 1. under reasonable terms and conditions that are demonstrably free of any unfair discrimination;
101 or
- 102 2. without compensation and under reasonable terms and conditions that are demonstrably free
103 of any unfair discrimination.

104 Such assurance shall indicate that the patent holder (or third party authorized to make assurances on its
105 behalf) will include in any documents transferring ownership of patents subject to the assurance, provi-
106 sions sufficient to ensure that the commitments in the assurance are binding on the transferee, and that
107 the transferee will similarly include appropriate provisions in the event of future transfers with the goal
108 of binding each successor-in-interest.

109 The assurance shall also indicate that it is intended to be binding on successors-in-interest regardless of
110 whether such provisions are included in the relevant transfer documents.

111 Such statements should be addressed to: mobile-nccoe@nist.gov

112 **Contents**

113 **1 Introduction 1**

114 1.1 Practice Guide Structure 1

115 1.2 Build Overview 2

116 1.3 Typographic Conventions 3

117 1.4 Logical Architecture Summary 3

118 **2 Product Installation Guides 4**

119 2.1 Network Device Enrollment Services Server 4

120 2.1.1 Certificate Authority (CA) Configuration 5

121 2.1.2 NDES Configuration 5

122 2.2 International Business Machines MaaS360 9

123 2.2.1 Cloud Extender 9

124 2.2.2 Android Enterprise Configuration 16

125 2.2.3 iOS APNs Certificate Configuration 17

126 2.2.4 Android Configuration 17

127 2.2.5 iOS Configuration 20

128 2.3 Zimperium 22

129 2.3.1 Zimperium and MaaS360 Integration 22

130 2.3.2 Automatic Device Activation 24

131 2.3.3 Enforce Application Compliance 25

132 2.3.4 MaaS360 Risk Posture Alerts 26

133 2.4 Palo Alto Networks Virtual Firewall 27

134 2.4.1 Network Configuration 27

135 2.4.2 Demilitarized Zone Configuration 30

136 2.4.3 Firewall Configuration 31

137 2.4.4 Certificate Configuration 32

138 2.4.5 Website Filtering Configuration 33

139 2.4.6 User Authentication Configuration 39

140 2.4.7 VPN Configuration 43

141 2.4.8 Enable Automatic Application and Threat Updates54
142 2.5 Kryptowire 56
143 2.5.1 Kryptowire and MaaS360 Integration56
144 **Appendix A List of Acronyms 58**
145 **Appendix B Glossary 60**
146 **Appendix C References 61**

147 **List of Figures**

148 **Figure 1-1 High-Level Build Architecture4**
149 **Figure 2-1 Post-Deployment Configuration6**
150 **Figure 2-2 PasswordMax Registry Configuration8**
151 **Figure 2-3 NDES Domain Bindings.....9**
152 **Figure 2-4 Cloud Extender Architecture.....10**
153 **Figure 2-5 Old Cloud Extender Interface.....11**
154 **Figure 2-6 Cloud Extender Service Account Details12**
155 **Figure 2-7 Administrator Settings13**
156 **Figure 2-8 Administrator Configuration Options.....14**
157 **Figure 2-9 Cloud Extender SCEP Configuration15**
158 **Figure 2-10 Cloud Extender Certificate Properties16**
159 **Figure 2-11 Enterprise Binding Settings Confirmation.....17**
160 **Figure 2-12 Android GlobalProtect Application Compliance.....20**
161 **Figure 2-13 Zimperium MaaS360 Integration Configuration.....23**
162 **Figure 2-14 Zimperium zIPS iOS Configuration.....24**
163 **Figure 2-15 Zimperium zIPS Android Configuration25**
164 **Figure 2-16 Add Alert Button26**
165 **Figure 2-17 Zimperium Risk Posture Alert Configuration27**
166 **Figure 2-18 DNS Proxy Object Configuration29**

167	Figure 2-19 Original Packet Network Address Translation Configuration	30
168	Figure 2-20 Certificate Profile	33
169	Figure 2-21 Custom URL Category	34
170	Figure 2-22 URL Filtering Profile	35
171	Figure 2-23 URL Filtering Security Policy	36
172	Figure 2-24 Generating the Root CA	37
173	Figure 2-25 Blocked Website Notification	39
174	Figure 2-26 Service Route Configuration	40
175	Figure 2-27 LDAP Server Profile	41
176	Figure 2-28 LDAP Group Mapping	42
177	Figure 2-29 LDAP User Authentication Profile	43
178	Figure 2-30 Configured Tunnel Interfaces	43
179	Figure 2-31 SSL VPN Tunnel Interface Configuration	44
180	Figure 2-32 GlobalProtect iOS Authentication Profile	46
181	Figure 2-33 LDAP Authentication Group Configuration	47
182	Figure 2-34 VPN Zone Configuration	48
183	Figure 2-35 GlobalProtect Portal General Configuration	49
184	Figure 2-36 GlobalProtect Portal Authentication Configuration	50
185	Figure 2-37 GlobalProtect Portal Agent Authentication Configuration	51
186	Figure 2-38 GlobalProtect Portal Agent Configuration	52
187	Figure 2-39 Captive Portal Configuration	53
188	Figure 2-40 GlobalProtect Portal	54
189	Figure 2-41 Downloaded Threats and Applications	55
190	Figure 2-42 Schedule Time Hyperlink	55
191	Figure 2-43 Application and Threats Update Schedule	56

192 1 Introduction

193 The following volumes of this guide show information technology (IT) professionals and security
194 engineers how we implemented this example solution. We cover all of the products employed in this
195 reference design. We do not re-create the product manufacturers' documentation, which is presumed
196 to be widely available. Rather, these volumes show how we incorporated the products together in our
197 environment.

198 *Note: These are not comprehensive tutorials. There are many possible service and security configurations*
199 *for these products that are out of scope for this reference design.*

200 1.1 Practice Guide Structure

201 This National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) Cybersecurity Practice Guide demonstrates a
202 standards-based reference design and provides users with the information they need to replicate
203 enhancing the security of bring your own device (BYOD) solutions. This reference design is modular and
204 can be deployed in whole or in part.

205 This guide contains four volumes:

- 206 ▪ NIST SP 1800-22A: *Executive Summary*
- 207 ▪ NIST SP 1800-22B: *Approach, Architecture, and Security Characteristics* – what we built and why
- 208 ▪ NIST SP 1800-22 Supplement: *Example Scenario: Putting Guidance into Practice* – how
209 organizations can implement this example solution's guidance
- 210 ▪ NIST SP 1800-22C: *How-To Guides* – instructions for building the example solution (**you are**
211 **here**)

212

213 Depending on your role in your organization, you might use this guide in different ways:

214 **Business decision makers, including chief security and technology officers,** will be interested in the
215 *Executive Summary, NIST SP 1800-22A*, which describes the following topics:

- 216 ▪ challenges that enterprises face in managing the security of BYOD deployments
- 217 ▪ the example solution built at the NCCoE
- 218 ▪ benefits of adopting the example solution

219 **Technology or security program managers** who are concerned with how to identify, understand, assess,
220 and mitigate risk will be interested in *NIST SP 1800-22B*, which describes what we did and why. The
221 following sections will be of particular interest:

- 222 ▪ Section 4.1.4, Conduct a Risk Assessment, describes the risk analysis we performed.

- 223 ▪ Appendix I, Example Security Control Map, maps the security characteristics of this example
224 solution to cybersecurity standards and best practices.

225 You might share the *Executive Summary, NIST SP 1800-22A*, with your leadership team members to help
226 them understand the importance of adopting standards-based BYOD solutions.

227 **IT professionals** who want to implement an approach like this will find this whole practice guide useful.
228 You can use this How-To portion of the guide, *NIST SP 1800-22C*, to replicate all or parts of the build
229 created in our lab. This How-To portion of the guide provides specific product installation, configuration,
230 and integration instructions for implementing the example solution. We do not recreate the product
231 manufacturers' documentation, which is generally widely available. Rather, we show how we
232 incorporated the products together in our environment to create an example solution.

233 This guide assumes that IT professionals have experience implementing security products within the
234 enterprise. While we have used a suite of commercial products to address this challenge, this guide does
235 not endorse these particular products. Your organization can adopt this solution or one that adheres to
236 these guidelines in whole, or you can use this guide as a starting point for tailoring and implementing
237 parts of a BYOD solution. Your organization's security experts should identify the products that will best
238 integrate with your existing tools and IT system infrastructure. We hope that you will seek products that
239 are congruent with applicable standards and best practices. Volume B, Section 3.7, Technologies, lists
240 the products that we used and maps them to the cybersecurity controls provided by this reference
241 solution.

242 **For those who would like to see how the example solution can be implemented**, this practice guide
243 contains an example scenario about a fictional company called Great Seneca Accounting. The example
244 scenario shows how BYOD objectives can align with an organization's priority security and privacy
245 capabilities through NIST risk management standards, guidance, and tools. It is provided in this practice
246 guide's supplement, *NIST SP 1800-22 Example Scenario: Putting Guidance into Practice*.

247 A NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guide does not describe "the" solution, but a possible solution. This is a
248 draft guide. We seek feedback on its contents and welcome your input. Comments, suggestions, and
249 success stories will improve subsequent versions of this guide. Please contribute your thoughts to
250 mobile-nccoe@nist.gov.

251 1.2 Build Overview

252 In our lab at the National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence (NCCoE), NIST engineers built an
253 environment that contains an example solution for managing the security of BYOD deployments. In this
254 guide, we show how an enterprise can leverage this example solution's concepts to implement
255 Enterprise Mobility Management (EMM), mobile threat defense, application vetting, secure boot/image
256 authentication, and virtual private network (VPN) services in support of a BYOD solution.

257 These technologies were configured to protect organizational assets and end-user privacy, providing
 258 methodologies to enhance the data protection posture of the adopting organization. The standards,
 259 best practices, and certification programs that this example solution is based upon help ensure the
 260 confidentiality, integrity, and availability of enterprise data on mobile systems.

261 1.3 Typographic Conventions

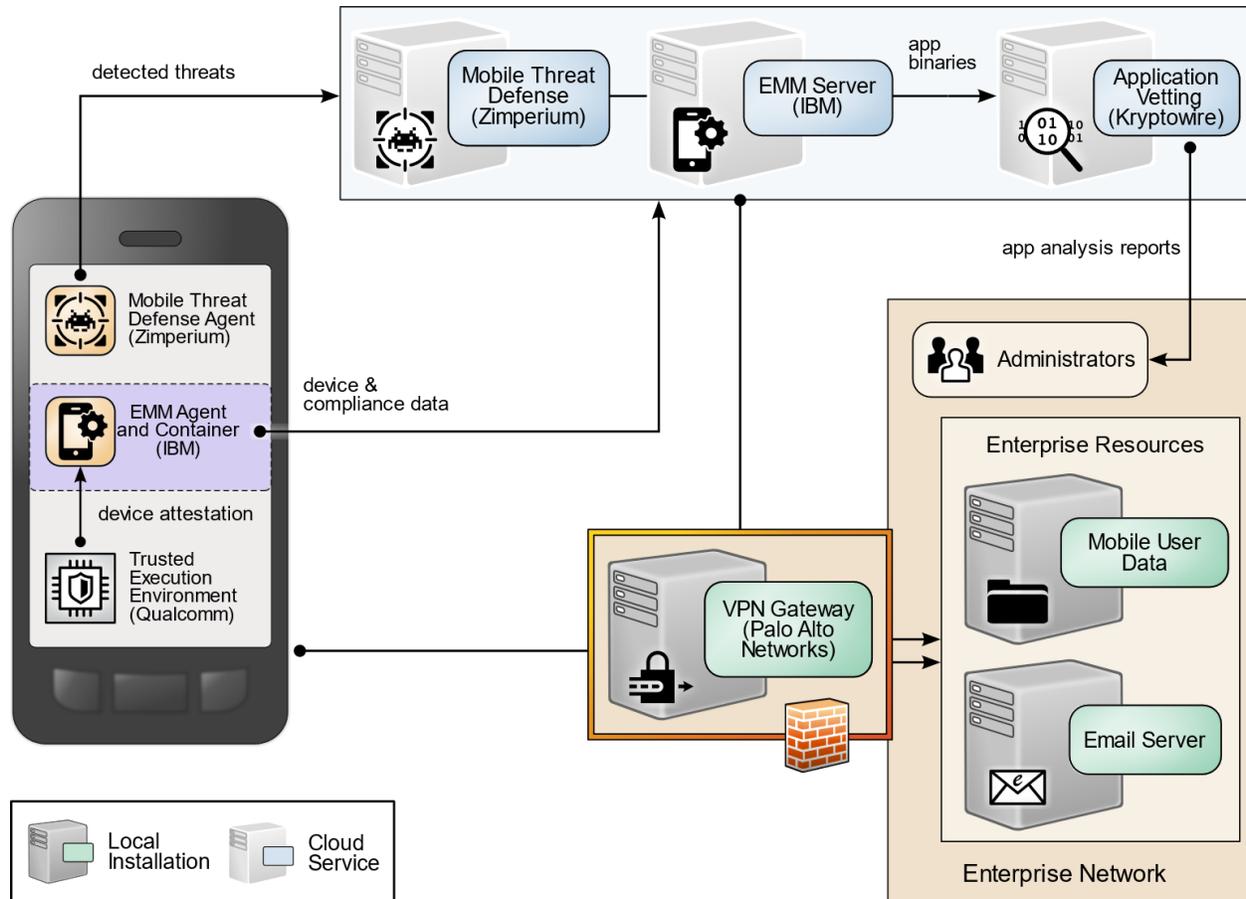
262 The following table presents typographic conventions used in this volume.

Typeface/Symbol	Meaning	Example
<i>Italics</i>	file names and path names; references to documents that are not hyperlinks; new terms; and placeholders	For language use and style guidance, see the <i>NCCoE Style Guide</i> .
Bold	names of menus, options, command buttons, and fields	Choose File > Edit .
Monospace	command-line input, onscreen computer output, sample code examples, and status codes	<code>mkdir</code>
Monospace Bold	command-line user input contrasted with computer output	<code>service sshd start</code>
blue text	link to other parts of the document, a web URL, or an email address	All publications from NIST's NCCoE are available at https://www.nccoe.nist.gov .

263 Acronyms used in figures can be found in the Acronyms appendix.

264 1.4 Logical Architecture Summary

265 The graphic below shows the components of the build architecture and how they interact on a high
 266 level.

267 **Figure 1-1 High-Level Build Architecture**268

2 Product Installation Guides

269 This section of the practice guide contains detailed instructions for installing and configuring all of the
 270 products used to build an instance of the example solution.

271 This guide assumes that a basic active directory (AD) infrastructure has been configured. The domain
 272 controller (DC) is used to authenticate users when enrolling devices as well as when connecting to the
 273 virtual private network (VPN). In this implementation, the domain *enterprise.mds.local* was used.

274

2.1 Network Device Enrollment Services Server

275 A Network Device Enrollment Service (NDES)/Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP) server was
 276 used to issue client certificates to new devices that were enrolled by using MaaS360. This guide assumes
 277 that a basic AD infrastructure is in place.

278 2.1.1 Certificate Authority (CA) Configuration

279 The guide followed for the build is linked below, followed by the specific configuration changes used.

280 Configuration guide: <https://gallery.technet.microsoft.com/Windows-Server-2016-Active-165e88d1>

281 Configuration changes that were made:

- 282 ▪ The Root CA Name was changed to ROOT-CA.
- 283 ▪ The Issuing CA Name was changed to SUB-CA.
- 284 ▪ The entry for `DC=srv,DC=lab` was replaced with `DC=enterprise,DC=mds,DC=local` at various
- 285 points throughout the guide.

286 2.1.1.1 Export Certificates

287 This section assumes that a location exists that is accessible by all machines on the network, such as a
288 shared folder or network drive. Furthermore, this section assumes that configuration of the root and
289 subordinate CA has been completed.

- 290 1. Log in to the root CA.
- 291 2. Open the start menu, and search for *cmd*.
- 292 3. Right-click **Command Prompt**, and select **Run as administrator**.
- 293 4. Navigate to the shared storage location.
- 294 5. Run the command `certutil -ca.cert root.cert`.
- 295 6. The file named *root.cert* will now contain a base64-encoded copy of the root CA certificate.
- 296 7. Repeat steps 1–6 with the sub CA, replacing *root.cert* with *sub.cert*.
- 297 8. (optional) Disconnect and shut down the root CA.

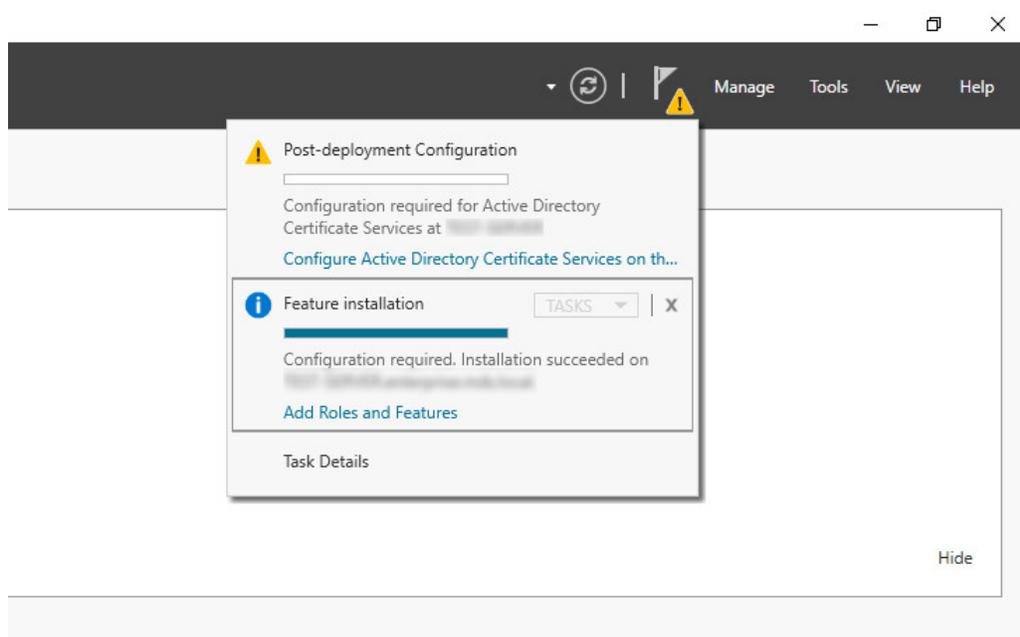
298 2.1.2 NDES Configuration

299 This section outlines configuration of an NDES that resides on its own server. Alternatively, the NDES can
300 be installed on the SUB-CA. This section assumes a new domain-attached Windows Server is running.

- 301 1. From the Server Manager, select **Manage > Add Roles and Features**.
- 302 2. Click **Next** three times until **Server Roles** is highlighted.
- 303 3. Check the box next to **Active Directory Certificate Services**.
- 304 4. Click **Next** three times until **Role Services** is highlighted.

- 305 5. Uncheck **Certification Authority**. Check **Network Device Enrollment Service**.
- 306 6. Click **Add Features** on the pop-up.
- 307 7. Click **Next** three times.
- 308 8. Click **Install**.
- 309 9. When installation completes, click the flag in the upper right-hand corner, and click **Configure**
- 310 **Active Directory Certificate Services**.

311 **Figure 2-1 Post-Deployment Configuration**



- 312 10. Specify the credentials of a Domain Administrator. Click **Next**.

313 Note: The domain administrator credentials are required only to configure the NDES. Once the service is

314 configured, the service is executed as the NDES service account, which does not require domain

315 administrator permissions, created in step 12 below.

- 316 11. Check **Network Device Enrollment Service**. Click **Next**.

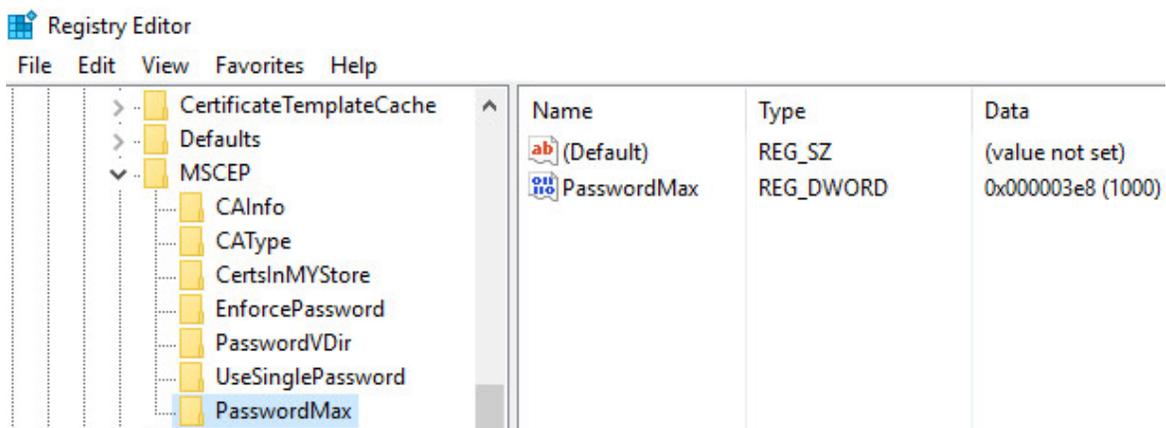
- 317 12. Configure an NDES service account by performing the following actions:

- 318 a. On the active directory server, open **Active Directory Users and Computers**.
- 319 b. Click **Users** and create a new user for the service. For this example, it will be named
- 320 NDES. Be sure the password never expires.

- 321 c. On the NDES server, open **Edit local users and groups**.
- 322 d. Click **Groups**. Right-click **IIS_IUSRS**, click **Add to Group**, and click **Add**.
- 323 e. Search for the service account name—in this case, NDES. Click **Check Names**, and click
- 324 **OK** if no errors were displayed.
- 325 f. Click **Apply**, and click **OK**.
- 326 g. Close all windows except the NDES configuration window.
- 327 13. Click **Select** next to the box, and enter the service account credentials. Click **Next**.
- 328 14. Because the NDES runs on its own server, we will target it at the SUB-CA. Select **Computer name**
- 329 and click **Select**. Type in the computer name—in this case, SUB-CA. Click **Check Names**, and if no
- 330 errors occurred, click **OK**.
- 331 15. Click **Next** three times.
- 332 16. Click **Configure**.
- 333 17. On the SUB-CA, open the Certification Authority application.
- 334 18. Expand the SUB-CA node, right-click on **Certificate Templates**, and click **Manage**.
- 335 19. Right-click on **IPSec (Offline Request)**, and click **Duplicate Template**.
- 336 20. Under the **General** tab, set the template display name to **NDES**.
- 337 21. Under the **Security** tab, click **Add**.
- 338 22. Select the previously configured NDES service account.
- 339 23. Click **OK**. Ensure the NDES service account is highlighted, and check **Read** and **Enroll**.
- 340 24. Click **Apply**.
- 341 25. In the Certification Authority program, right-click on **Certificate Templates**, and select **New >**
- 342 **Certificate Template to Issue**.
- 343 26. Select the NDES template created in step 24.
- 344 27. Click **OK**.
- 345 28. On the NDES server, open the Registry Editor (`regedit`).
- 346 29. Expand the following key: `HKLM\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Cryptography`.
- 347 30. Select the `MSCEP` key and update all entries besides (Default) to be **NDES**.

- 348 31. Expand the following key: `HKLM\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Cryptography\MSCEP`.
- 349 32. Right-click on **MSCEP**, and select **New > Key**. Name it **PasswordMax**.
- 350 33. Right-click on the newly created key and select **New > DWORD (32-bit) Value**.
- 351 34. Name it **PasswordMax**, and give it a value of **0x00003e8**. This increases the NDES password
- 352 cache to 1,000 entries instead of the default 5. This value can be further adjusted based on
- 353 NDES demands.

354 **Figure 2-2 PasswordMax Registry Configuration**



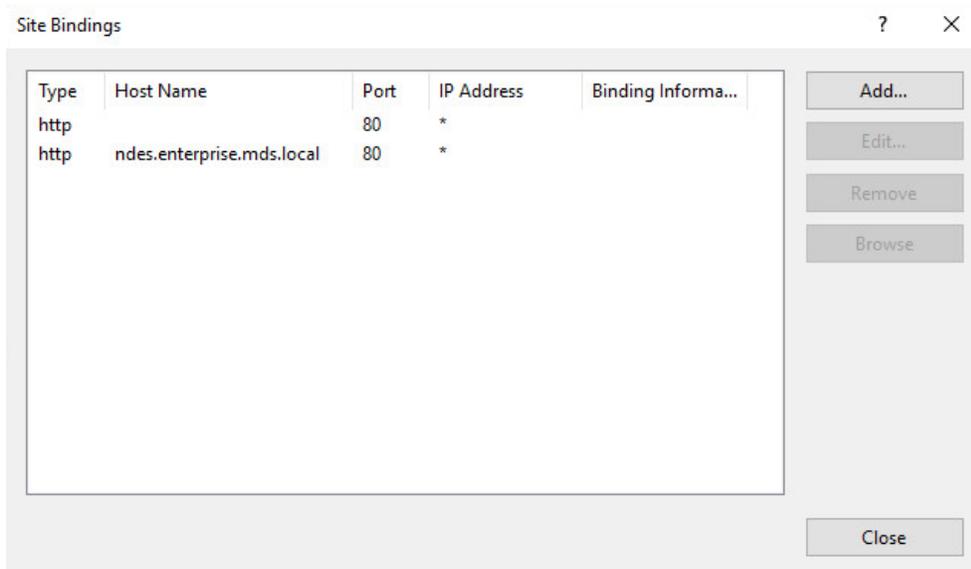
355 **Note:** The **PasswordMax** key governs the maximum number of NDES passwords that can reside in the

356 cache. A password is cached when a valid certificate request is received, and it is removed from the

357 cache when the password is used or when 60 minutes have elapsed, whichever occurs first. If the

358 **PasswordMax** key is not present, the default value of 5 is used.

- 359 1. In an elevated command prompt, execute `%windir%\system32\inetsrv\appcmd set config`
- 360 `/section:requestFiltering /requestLimits.maxQueryString:8192` to increase the maxi-
- 361 mum query string. This prevents requests longer than 2,048 bytes from being dropped.
- 362 2. Open the **Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager**.
- 363 3. On the left, expand **NDES > Sites**, and select **Default Web Site**.
- 364 4. On the right, click **Bindings...**
- 365 5. Click **Add**.
- 366 6. Below **Host Name**, enter the host name of the server. For this implementation, *ndes.enter-*
- 367 *prise.mds.local* was used.
- 368 7. Click **OK**.

369 **Figure 2-3 NDES Domain Bindings**

370

371 8. Click **Close**, and close the IIS Manager.372 9. In an elevated command prompt, execute `iisreset`, or reboot the NDES server.373

2.2 International Business Machines MaaS360

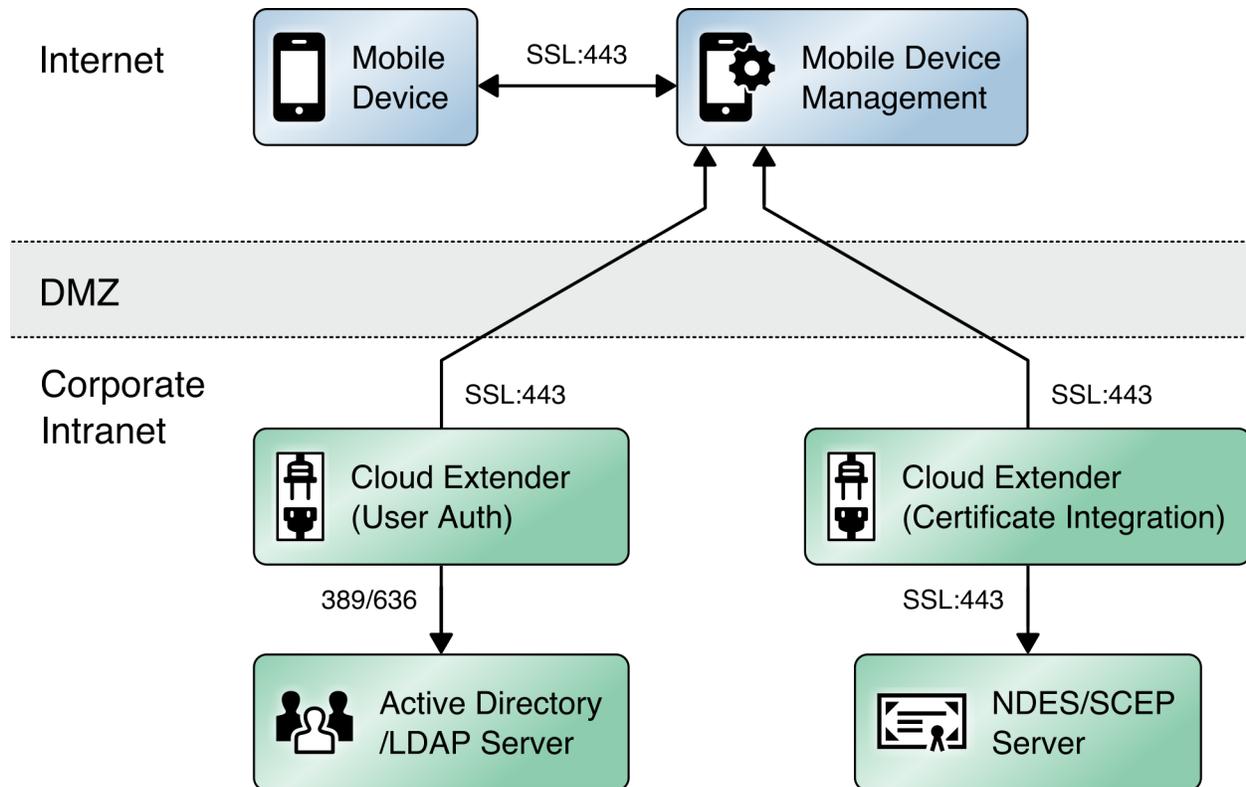
374 International Business Machines (IBM) contributed an instance of MaaS360 ([https://www.ibm.com/us-](https://www.ibm.com/us-en/marketplace/unified-endpoint-management)
 375 [en/marketplace/unified-endpoint-management](https://www.ibm.com/us-en/marketplace/unified-endpoint-management)) to deploy as the mobile device management (MDM)
 376 solution.

377

2.2.1 Cloud Extender

378 The IBM MaaS360 Cloud Extender is installed within the AD domain to provide AD and lightweight
 379 directory access protocol (LDAP) authentication methods for the MaaS360 web portal, as well as
 380 corporate VPN capabilities. The cloud extender architecture [1], as shown in Figure 2-4, gives a visual
 381 overview of how information flows between the web portal and the MaaS360 Cloud Extender.

382 Figure 2-4 Cloud Extender Architecture

383 **2.2.1.1 Cloud Extender Download**

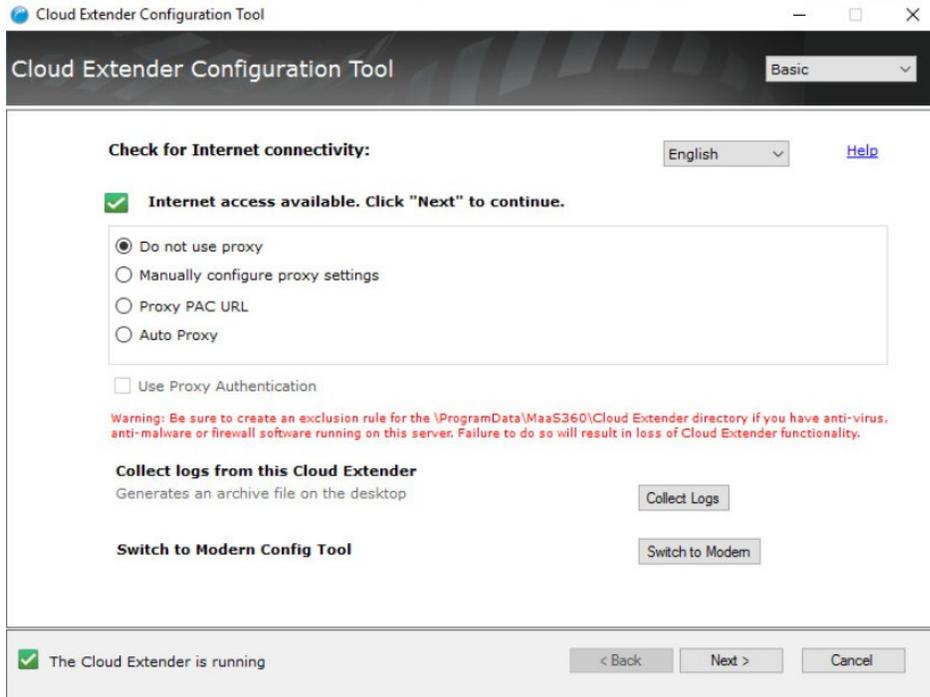
- 384 1. Log in to the MaaS360 web portal.
- 385 2. Click **Setup > Cloud Extender**.
- 386 3. Click the link that says **Click here to get your License Key**. The license key will be emailed to the
- 387 currently logged-in user's email address.
- 388 4. Click the link that says **Click here to download the Cloud Extender**. Save the binary.
- 389 5. Move the binary to a machine behind the corporate firewall that is always online. Recommendation: Install it while logged in as a domain user on a machine that is not the domain controller.
- 390
- 391 6. Install **.NET 3.5 Features** in the **Server Manager** on the machine where the MaaS360 Cloud Ex-
- 392 tender will run.

393 **2.2.1.2 Cloud Extender Active Directory Configuration**

- 394 1. On the target machine, run the installation binary.

- 395 2. Enter the license key when prompted.
- 396 3. Proceed through the setup until the Cloud Extender Configuration Utility opens.
- 397 4. If using the old cloud extender interface, click **Switch to Modern**.

398 **Figure 2-5 Old Cloud Extender Interface**



- 399 5. Enable the toggle below User Authentication.
- 400 6. Create a new authentication profile by entering the username, password, and domain of the
- 401 created service account.

402 **Figure 2-6 Cloud Extender Service Account Details**

The screenshot shows the 'User Authentication' configuration page in the MaaS360 web portal. The page has a dark blue header with navigation links: HOME, IMPORT, EXPORT, PROXY, SETTINGS, and HELP. A language dropdown menu is set to 'English (United States)'. The main content area is titled 'User Authentication' and includes a sub-header 'Allows users to enroll devices using corporate directory credentials'. A progress indicator on the left shows three steps: 'Start' (completed), '2 Service Account' (current), and '3 Finish'. The 'Provide Service Account details' section contains the following fields and options:

- Service account should be:
 1. Domain User on Active Directory
 2. Local Administrator on this server
- Username: MAAS360
- Password: [masked with dots]
- Domain: enterprise.mds.local
- Enable Secure Authentication Mode

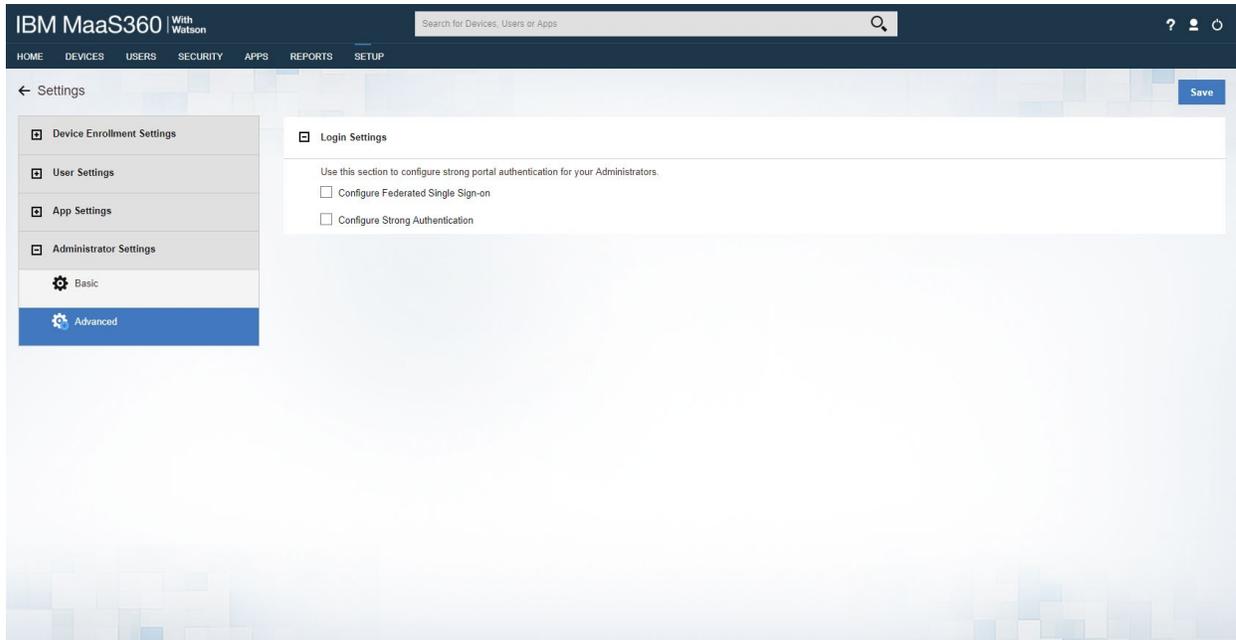
At the bottom right of the form are four buttons: 'Back', 'Next' (highlighted in blue), 'Save', and 'Cancel'. A status bar at the bottom left shows a green checkmark and the text 'The Cloud Extender is running'.

- 403 7. Click **Next**.
- 404 8. (optional) Use the next page to test the active directory integration.
- 405 9. Click **Save**.
- 406 10. In MaaS360, navigate to **Setup > Cloud Extender**. Ensure that configuration information is displayed, indicating that the MaaS360 Cloud Extender is running.
- 407

408 *2.2.1.3 MaaS360 Portal Active Directory Authentication Configuration*

- 409 1. Log in to the MaaS360 web portal as an administrator.
- 410 2. Go to **Setup > Settings**.
- 411 3. Expand **Administrator Settings**, and click **Advanced**.

412 Figure 2-7 Administrator Settings



- 413 4. Select **Configure Federated Single Sign-on**.
- 414 5. Select **Authenticate against Corporate User Directory**.
- 415 6. Next to **Default Domain**, enter the active directory domain. In this implementation, *enterprise.mds.local* was used.
- 416
- 417 7. Check the box next to **Allow existing Administrators to use portal credentials as well**.
- 418 8. Check the box next to **Automatically create new Administrator accounts and update roles**
- 419 **based on user groups**.
- 420 9. Under **User Groups**, enter the distinguished name of the group(s) that should be allowed to log
- 421 in. In this implementation, CN=Domain Admins, CN=Users, DC=enterprise, DC=mds, DC=local
- 422 was used.
- 423 10. Next to the box, select **Administrator–Level 2**. This allows domain admins to log in as MaaS360
- 424 administrators.

425 **Figure 2-8 Administrator Configuration Options**

Allow existing Administrators to use portal credentials as well. ⓘ

 Note: Since the username for one or more administrator account is not the same as their Corporate email addresses, following additional setup is required.

1. Navigate to "Setup > Administrators" workflow.
2. Edit the administrator accounts and specify the Corporate Usernames for these accounts.

Automatically create new Administrator accounts and update roles based on User Groups

User Groups (Specify the Distinguished Name of the User Groups)

CN=Domain Admins,CN=Users,DC=enterj	Administrator - Level 2	⊖
	----Select Role----	⊕

426 11. Click **Save**.427 **2.2.1.4 Cloud Extender NDES Integration**428 To properly generate device certificates, MaaS360 must be integrated with the on-premises public key
429 infrastructure (PKI).

- 430 1. Log in to the server running the MaaS360 Cloud Extender.
- 431 2. Launch the Cloud Extender Configuration Tool.
- 432 3. Toggle the button below Certificate Integration.
- 433 4. Click **Add New Template**.
- 434 5. Ensure **Microsoft CA** and **Device Identity Certificates** are selected.
- 435 6. Click **Next**.
- 436 7. Enter **NDES** for the Template Name and SCEP Default Template.
- 437 8. Enter the uniform resource locator (URL) of the NDES server next to **SCEP Server**.
- 438 9. Enter credentials of a user with enroll permissions on the template for **Challenge Username** and
- 439 **Challenge Password**. For this demo implementation, we use the NDES service account.

440 Figure 2-9 Cloud Extender SCEP Configuration

HOME IMPORT EXPORT PROXY SETTINGS HELP

English (United States)

Certificate Integration

Securely deploy identity certificates to mobile devices

SCEP - Microsoft, Verizon, Open Trust server details

1 Start

2 SCEP Config

3 Cert Attributes

4 Finish

Template Name: NDES

Hostname of SCEP server: https ndes.enterprise.mds.local

SCEP Server challenge type: Dynamic Static None

Challenge Username: ENTERPRISE\NDESSvc

Challenge Password:

Back Next Save Cancel

The Cloud Extender is running

441 10. Click **Next**.442 11. (optional) Check the box next to **Cache certs on Cloud Extender** and specify a cache path on the
443 machine.

444 **Figure 2-10 Cloud Extender Certificate Properties**

HOME IMPORT EXPORT PROXY SETTINGS HELP ~ English (United States) ▾

Certificate Integration

Securely deploy identity certificates to mobile devices ⓘ

Certificate Properties

Subject Name ⓘ

Subject Alternate Name

Cache certs on Cloud Extender

Location of Certificate Cache

Back Next Save Cancel

✓ The Cloud Extender is running

445 12. Click **Next**.

446 13. (optional) Enter values for uname and email and generate a test certificate to test the configura-
447 tion.

448 14. Click **Save**.

449 Note: If a file access message appears, delete the file, and re-save the file.

450 2.2.2 Android Enterprise Configuration

451 A Google account was used to provision Android Enterprise on the mobile devices. A managed domain
452 can be used, but in this use case it was not necessary. A managed domain is necessary only if the
453 corporation already has data stored in Google's cloud.

454 1. Create a Google account if you do not have one you wish to bind with.

455 2. From the MaaS360 portal, navigate to **Setup > Services**.

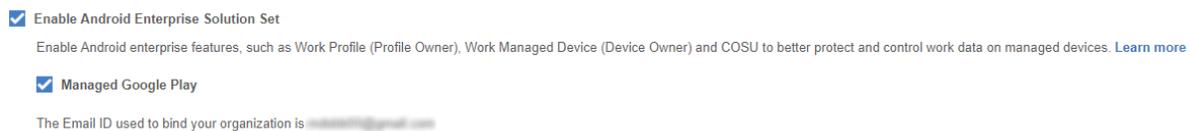
456 3. Click **Mobile Device Management**.

457 4. Check the box next to **Enable Android Enterprise Solution Set**.

458 5. Enter your password, and click **Enable**.

- 459 6. Click **Mobile Device Management**.
- 460 7. Click the radio button next to **Enable via Managed Google Play Accounts (no G Suite)**.
- 461 8. Ensure all pop-up blockers are disabled. Click the link on the word **here**.
- 462 9. Enter your password, and click **Enable**.
- 463 10. In the new page that opens, ensure you are signed into the Google account you wish to bind.
- 464 11. Click **Get started**.
- 465 12. Enter your business name, and click **Next**.
- 466 13. If General Data Protection Regulation compliance is not required, scroll to the bottom, check the
467 **I agree** box, and click **Confirm**. If compliance is required, fill out the requested information first.
- 468 14. Click **Complete Registration**.
- 469 15. Confirm binding on the **Setup** page under **Mobile Device Management**. The settings should look
470 like Figure 2-11, where the blurred-out portion is the Google email address used to bind.

471 **Figure 2-11 Enterprise Binding Settings Confirmation**



472 2.2.3 iOS APNs Certificate Configuration

473 For the iOS Apple Push Notification services (APNs) certificate configuration, the build team followed the
474 [IBM documentation](#).

475 2.2.4 Android Configuration

476 2.2.4.1 Policy Configuration

- 477 1. Navigate to **Security > Policies**.
- 478 2. Click the appropriate deployed Android policy.
- 479 3. Click **Edit**.
- 480 4. Navigate to **Android Enterprise Settings > Passcode**.
- 481 5. Check the box next to Configure Passcode Policy.

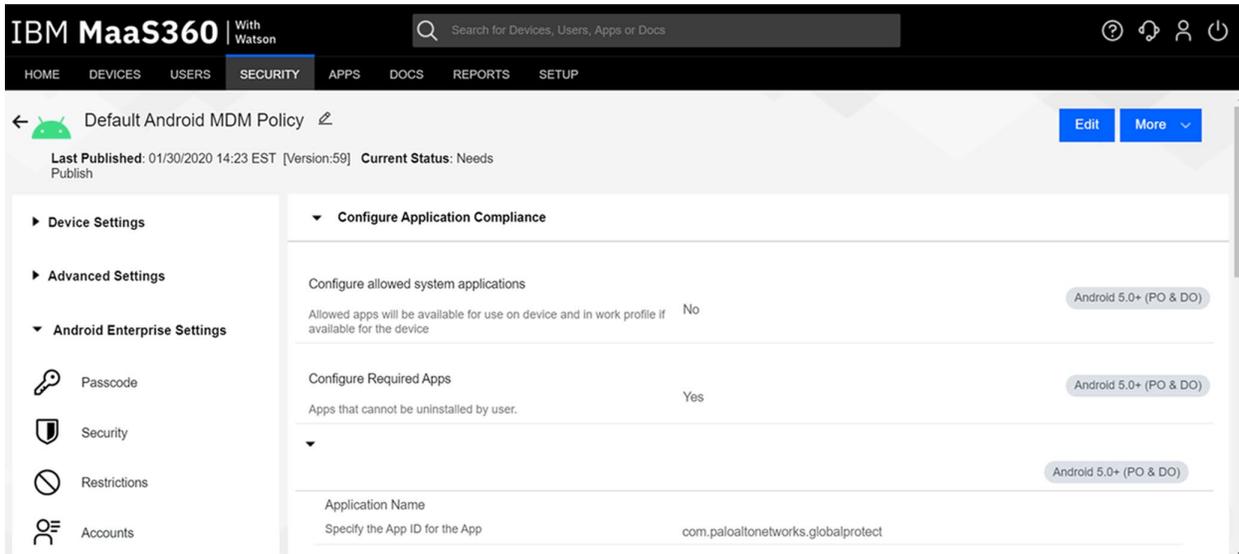
- 482 6. Configure the passcode settings based on corporate requirements.
- 483 7. Navigate to **Android Enterprise Settings > Restrictions**.
- 484 8. Check the box next to Configure Restrictions.
- 485 9. Configure restrictions based on corporate requirements.
- 486 10. Click **Save**.

487 *2.2.4.2 VPN Configuration*

- 488 1. Navigate to **Security > Policies**.
- 489 2. Click the currently deployed Android device policy.
- 490 3. Click **Edit**.
- 491 4. Navigate to **Android Enterprise Settings > Certificates**.
- 492 5. Check the box next to **Configure CA Certificates**.
- 493 6. Click **Add New**.
- 494 7. Give the certificate a name, such as Internal Root.
- 495 8. Click **Browse**, and navigate to the exported root CA certificate from earlier in the document.
- 496 9. Click **Save**.
- 497 10. Select **Internal Root** from the drop-down next to **CA Certificate**.
- 498 11. Click the + icon on the far right.
- 499 12. Repeat steps 6–10 with the internal sub CA certificate.
- 500 13. Check the box next to **Configure Identity Certificates**.
- 501 14. From the drop-down next to **Identity Certificate**, select the profile that matches the name con-
- 502 figured on the MaaS360 Cloud Extender—for this example, **NDES**.
- 503 15. Click **Save and Publish**, and follow the prompts to publish the updated policy. Click **Apps**.
- 504 16. Click **Add > Android > Google Play App**.
- 505 17. Select the radio button next to **Add via Public Google Play Store**.
- 506 18. Search for **GlobalProtect**.
- 507 19. Select the matching result.

- 508 20. Click **I Agree** when prompted to accept the permissions.
- 509 21. Check the three boxes next to **Remove App on**.
- 510 22. Check the box next to **Instant Install**.
- 511 23. Select **All Devices** next to **Distribute to**.
- 512 24. Click **Add**.
- 513 25. Next to the newly added GlobalProtect application, select **More > Edit App Configurations**.
- 514 26. Click **Check for Settings**.
- 515 27. Next to **Portal**, enter the GlobalProtect portal address. In this implementation,
516 *vpn.ent.mdse.nccoe.org* was used.
- 517 28. Next to **Username**, enter **%username%**.
- 518 29. Next to **Connection Method**, enter **user-logon**. (Note: This will enable an always-on VPN con-
519 nection for the work profile. The user will always see the VPN key icon, but it will apply only to
520 applications contained within the work container.)
- 521 30. Click **Save**, and follow the prompts to update the application configuration.
- 522 31. Navigate to **Security > Policies**.
- 523 32. Click the used Android policy.
- 524 33. Select **Android Enterprise Settings > App Compliance**.
- 525 34. Click **Edit**.
- 526 35. Click the **+** on the row below **Configure Required Apps**.
- 527 36. Enter the App Name, **GlobalProtect**.
- 528 37. Enter the App ID, **com.paloaltonetworks.globalprotect**.
- 529 38. Click **Save And Publish**, and follow the prompts to publish the policy.

530 Figure 2-12 Android GlobalProtect Application Compliance

531

2.2.5 iOS Configuration

532

2.2.5.1 Policy Configuration

- 533 1. Navigate to **Security > Policies**.
- 534 2. Click the deployed iOS policy.
- 535 3. Click **Edit**.
- 536 4. Check the box next to **Configure Passcode Policy**.
- 537 5. Check the box next to **Enforce Passcode on Mobile Device**.
- 538 6. Configure the rest of the displayed options based on corporate requirements.
- 539 7. Click **Restrictions**.
- 540 8. Check the box next to **Configure Device Restrictions**.
- 541 9. Configure restrictions based on corporate requirements.
- 542 10. Click **Save**.

543

2.2.5.2 VPN Configuration

- 544 1. Click **Device Settings > VPN**.

- 545 2. Click **Edit**.
- 546 3. Next to **Configure for Type**, select **Custom SSL**.
- 547 4. Enter a name next to **VPN Connection Name**. In this sample implementation, **Great Seneca VPN**
- 548 was used.
- 549 5. Next to **Identifier**, enter **com.paloaltonetworks.globalprotect.vpn**.
- 550 6. Next to **Host name of the VPN Server**, enter the URL of the VPN endpoint without http or https.
- 551 7. Next to **VPN User Account**, enter **%username%**.
- 552 8. Next to **User Authentication Type**, select **Certificate**.
- 553 9. Next to **Identity Certificate**, select the name of the certificate profile created during the NDES
- 554 configuration steps. In this sample implementation, **NDES** was used.
- 555 10. Next to **Custom Data 1**, enter **allowPortalProfile=0**
- 556 11. Next to **Custom Data 2**, enter **fromAspen=1**
- 557 12. Next to **Apps to use this VPN**, enter the application identifications (IDs) of applications to go
- 558 through the VPN. This will be the applications deployed to the devices as work applications.
- 559 13. Next to **Provider Type**, select **Packet Tunnel**.
- 560 14. Click **Apps**.
- 561 15. Click **Add > iOS > iTunes App Store App**.
- 562 16. Search for **GlobalProtect**.
- 563 17. Select the **non-Legacy** version.
- 564 18. Click **Policies and Distribution**.
- 565 19. Check all three boxes next to **Remove App on**.
- 566 20. Select **All Devices** next to **Distribute to**.
- 567 21. Check the box next to **Instant Install**.
- 568 22. Click **Add**.
- 569 23. Navigate to **Security > Policies**.
- 570 24. Click the used iOS policy.
- 571 25. Click **Application Compliance**.

- 572 26. Click **Edit**.
- 573 27. Click the + next to the first row under **Configure Required Applications**.
- 574 28. Search for **GlobalProtect**.
- 575 29. Select the **non-Legacy** result.
- 576 30. Navigate to **Advanced Settings > Certificate Credentials**.
- 577 31. Check the box next to **Configure Credentials for Adding Certificates on the Device**.
- 578 32. Click **Add New**.
- 579 33. Give the certificate a name, such as Internal Root.
- 580 34. Click **Browse**, and navigate to the exported root CA certificate from earlier in the document.
- 581 35. Click **Save**.
- 582 36. Select **Internal Root** from the drop-down next to **CA Certificate**.
- 583 37. Click the + icon on the far right.
- 584 38. Repeat steps 33–35 with the internal sub CA certificate.
- 585 39. From the drop-down next to **Identity Certificate**, select the profile that matches the name con-
586 figured on the MaaS360 Cloud Extender—for this example, **NDES**.
- 587 40. Click **Save And Publish**, and follow the prompts to publish the policy.

588 2.3 Zimperium

589 Zimperium was used as a mobile threat defense service via a MaaS360 integration.

590 Note: For Zimperium automatic enrollment to function properly, users **must** have an email address
591 associated with their MaaS360 user account.

592 2.3.1 Zimperium and MaaS360 Integration

593 This section assumes that IBM has provisioned an application programming interface (API) key for
594 Zimperium within MaaS360.

- 595 1. Log in to the zConsole.
- 596 2. Navigate to **Manage > MDM**.
- 597 3. Select **Add MDM > MaaS360**.

- 598 4. Fill out the MDM URL, MDM username, MDM password, and API key.
- 599 5. Note: For the MDM URL, append the account ID to the end. For example, if the account ID is
- 600 12345, the MDM URL would be https://services.fiberlink.com/12345.
- 601 6. Check the box next to **Sync users**.

602 **Figure 2-13 Zimperium MaaS360 Integration Configuration**

Edit MDM

Step 1
Choose MDM Provider

Step 2
Setup IBM MaaS360

Step 3
Finish

URL
Specify URL for this MDM provider.

Username
Specify username for this MDM provider.

Password
Specify password for this MDM provider.

MDM Name
Specify a unique name for this MDM provider.

Sync users
Specify if this MDM provider should synchronise users.

Set synced users password
If you do not specify a password, a default value will be used

Synced users password
Specify the password for users synced from the MDM

Mask Imported User Information
By enabling this option, personally identifiable information will be masked (first name, last name and email) from the zConsole

API key
Specify API KEY for this MDM provider.

Send Device Activation email via zConsole for iOS Devices
By enabling this option, zConsole will send an activation email to a user for each iOS device which is synced from the MDM

Send Device Activation email via zConsole for Android Devices
By enabling this option, zConsole will send an activation email to a user for each Android device which is synced from the MDM

- 603 7. Click **Next**.
- 604 8. Select the MaaS360 groups to synchronize with Zimperium. In this case, **All Devices** was se-
- 605 lected.
- 606 9. Click **Finish**. Click **Sync Now** to synchronize all current MaaS360 users and devices.

607 2.3.2 Automatic Device Activation

608 Note: This requires contacting Zimperium support to get required application configuration values.

- 609 1. Log in to MaaS360.
- 610 2. Click **Apps** on the navigation bar.
- 611 3. Click **Add > iOS > iTunes App Store App**.
- 612 4. Search for **Zimperium zIPS**. Click the result that matches the name.
- 613 5. Click **Policies and Distribution**.
- 614 6. Check the three checkboxes next to **Remove App on**.
- 615 7. Next to **Distribute to**, select **All Devices**.
- 616 8. Click **Configuration**.
- 617 9. Set App Config Source to **Key/Value**.
- 618 10. The configuration requires three parameters: uuid, defaultchannel, and tenantid. uuid can be
- 619 set to **%csn%**, but defaultchannel and tenantid must come from Zimperium support.

620 **Figure 2-14 Zimperium zIPS iOS Configuration**

MDMDeviceID	%csn%	+ -
defaultchannel		+ -
tenantid		+ -

- 621 11. Click **Add**.
- 622 12. Click **Add > Android > Google Play App**.
- 623 13. Select the radio button next to **Add via Public Google Play Store**.
- 624 14. Search for **Zimperium Mobile IPS (zIPS)**.
- 625 15. Click the matching result.
- 626 16. Click **I Agree** when prompted to accept permissions.

- 627 17. Click **Policies and Distribution**.
- 628 18. Check all three boxes next to **Remove App on**.
- 629 19. Check **Instant Install**.
- 630 20. Select **All Devices** next to **Distribute to**.
- 631 21. Click **App Configurations**.
- 632 22. Check **Configure App Settings**.
- 633 23. Enter the values provided by Zimperium next to **Default Acceptor** and **Tenant**.
- 634 24. Next to **MDM Device ID**, insert **%deviceid%**.
- 635 25. Adjust any other configuration parameters as appropriate for your deployment scenario.

636 **Figure 2-15 Zimperium zIPS Android Configuration**

Default Acceptor:	<input type="text"/>
Tenant:	<input type="text"/>
UUID:	<input type="text"/>
Display EULA:	<input type="text" value="No"/>
Tracking ID 1:	<input type="text"/>
Tracking ID 2:	<input type="text"/>
MDM Device ID:	<input type="text" value="%deviceid%"/>

- 637 26. Click **Add**.

638 2.3.3 Enforce Application Compliance

639 From the IBM MaaS360 web portal:

- 640 1. Navigate to **Security > Policies**.
- 641 2. Select the default Android policy.

- 642 3. Navigate to **Android Enterprise Settings > App Compliance**.
- 643 4. Click **Edit**.
- 644 5. Check the box next to **Configure Required Apps** if not checked already. If it is, click the + icon.
- 645 6. Enter **com.zimperium.zips** as the App ID.
- 646 7. Click **Save And Publish**. This will prevent the user from uninstalling zIPS once it is installed.
- 647 8. Navigate to **Security > Policies**.
- 648 9. Select the default iOS policy.
- 649 10. Click **Application Compliance**.
- 650 11. Click **Edit**.
- 651 12. Check the box next to **Configure Required Applications** if not checked already. If it is, click the +
652 icon.
- 653 13. Enter **Zimperium zIPS** for the Application Name.
- 654 14. Click **Save And Publish**, and follow the prompts to publish the policy.

655 2.3.4 MaaS360 Risk Posture Alerts

- 656 1. From the MaaS360 home screen, click the + button that says **Add Alert**.

657 **Figure 2-16 Add Alert Button**



- 658 2. Next to **Available for**, select **All Administrators**.
- 659 3. For Name, enter **Zimperium Risk Posture Elevated**.
- 660 4. Under **Condition 1**, select **Custom Attributes** for Category.
- 661 5. Select **zimperium_risk_posture** for Attribute.
- 662 6. Select **Equal To** for Criteria.
- 663 7. For Value, select **Elevated** for the count of risk posture elevated devices or **Critical** for risk posture
664 critical devices.

665 **Figure 2-17 Zimperium Risk Posture Alert Configuration**

Add Alert Available for: All Administrators

Name & Description
 Name: Zimperium Risk Posture E
 Description: E.g. 'of my devices are jailbroken'
 Category: Security

Advanced Search

1. Search for: Active Devices Inactive Devices All Devices

2. With Device Type(s): Smartphones Tablets

3. Last Reported: Last 7 Days

4. Search Criteria: All Conditions (AND) [Learn more about configuring Search Criteria accurately](#)

Condition 1: Custom Attributes | zimperium_risk_posture | Equal To | Elevated

Condition 2: Select Category | Select Attribute | Select Criteria | Enter Text

666 8. Click **Update**.667

2.4 Palo Alto Networks Virtual Firewall

668 Palo Alto Networks contributed an instance of its VM-100 series firewall for use on the project.

669

2.4.1 Network Configuration

- 670 1. Ensure that all Ethernet cables are connected or assigned to the virtual machine and that the
- 671 management web user interface is accessible. Setup will require four Ethernet connections: one
- 672 for management, one for wide area network (WAN), one for local area network, and one for the
- 673 demilitarized zone (DMZ).
- 674 2. Reboot the machine if cables were attached while running.
- 675 3. Navigate to **Network > Interfaces > Ethernet**.
- 676 4. Click **ethernet1/1**, and set the Interface Type to be **Layer3**.
- 677 5. Click **IPv4**, ensure that **Static** is selected under Type, and click **Add** to add a new static address.
- 678 6. If the appropriate address does not exist yet, click **New Address** at the bottom of the prompt.
- 679 7. Once the appropriate interfaces are configured, commit the changes. The Link State icon should
- 680 turn green for the configured interfaces. The commit dialogue will warn about unconfigured
- 681 zones. That is an expected dialogue warning.

- 682 8. Navigate to **Network > Zones**.
- 683 9. Click **Add**. Give the zone an appropriate name, set the Type to **Layer3**, and assign it an interface.
- 684 10. Commit the changes.
- 685 11. Navigate to **Network > Virtual Routers**.
- 686 12. Click **Add**.
- 687 13. Give the router an appropriate name, and add the internal and external interfaces.
- 688 14. Click **Static Routes > Add**. Give the static route an appropriate name, e.g., WAN. Set the destina-
689 tion to be **0.0.0.0/0**, set the interface to be the WAN interface, and set the next hop internet
690 protocol (IP) address to be the upstream gateway's IP address.
- 691 15. (optional) Delete the default router by clicking the checkbox next to it and clicking **Delete** at the
692 bottom of the page.
- 693 16. Commit the changes. The commit window should not display any more warnings.
- 694 17. Navigate to **Network > DNS Proxy**.
- 695 18. Click **Add**.
- 696 19. Give the proxy an appropriate name. Under **Primary**, enter the primary domain name system
697 (DNS) IP address.
- 698 20. (optional) Enter the secondary DNS IP address.
- 699 21. Add the interfaces under **Interface**. Click **OK**.

700 Figure 2-18 DNS Proxy Object Configuration

DNS Proxy

Enable

Name: Enterprise_DNS_Proxy

Inheritance Source: None

Primary: 10.8.1.1

Secondary: 192.168.8.10

Interface

- ethernet1/1
- ethernet1/2
- ethernet1/3

+ Add - Delete

DNS Proxy Rules

Static Entries Advanced

Name	Cacheable	Domain Name	Primary	Secondary
0 items				

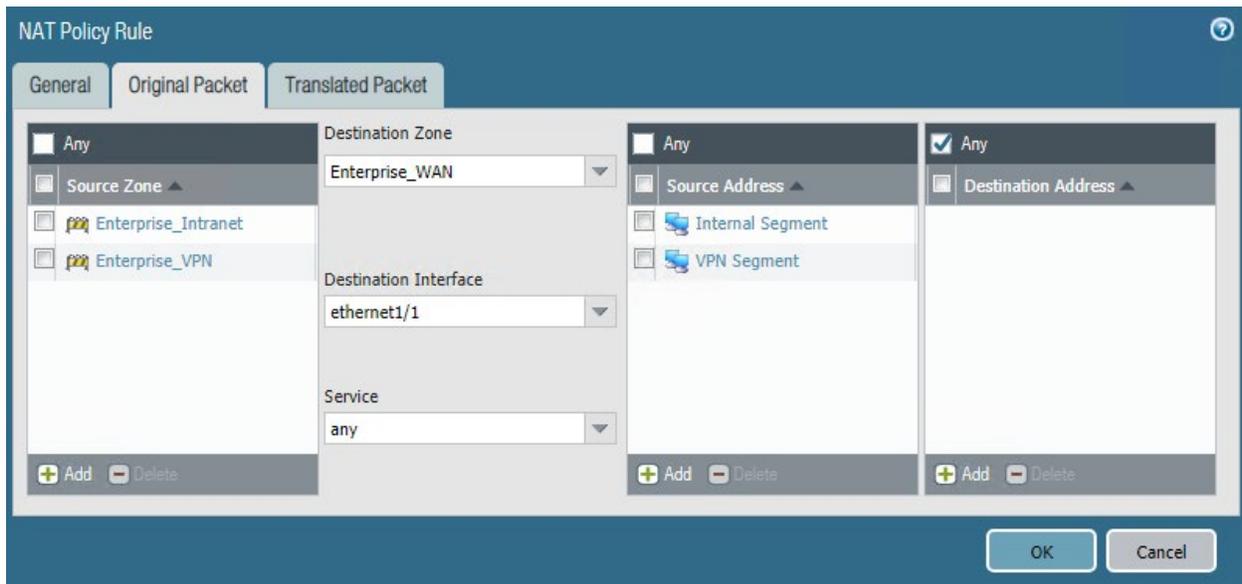
+ Add - Delete

OK Cancel

- 701 22. Navigate to **Device > Services**.
- 702 23. Click the **gear** in the top-right corner of the Services panel.
- 703 24. Under **DNS settings**, click the radio button next to **DNS Proxy Object**. Select the created DNS
- 704 proxy object from the drop-down.
- 705 25. Click **OK** and commit the changes. This is where static DNS entries will be added in the future.
- 706 26. Navigate to **Objects > Addresses**.
- 707 27. For each device on the network, click **Add**. Give the device an appropriate name, enter an op-
- 708 tional description, and enter the IP address.
- 709 28. Click **OK**.
- 710 29. Once all devices are added, commit the changes.
- 711 30. Navigate to **Policies > NAT**.
- 712 31. Click **Add**.

- 713 32. Give the network address translation rule a meaningful name, such as External Internet Access.
- 714 33. Click **Original Packet**.
- 715 34. Click **Add**, and add the zone representing the intranet—in this case, **Enterprise_Intranet**.
- 716 35. Repeat step 34 for the secure sockets layer (SSL) VPN zone.
- 717 36. Under **Source Address**, click **Add**.
- 718 37. Enter the subnet corresponding to the intranet segment.
- 719 38. Repeat step 37 for the SSL VPN segment.
- 720 39. Click **Translated Packet**. Set the translation type to **Dynamic IP and Port**. Set Address Type to be
- 721 **Interface Address**. Set Interface to be the WAN interface, and set the IP address to be the WAN
- 722 IP of the firewall.
- 723 40. Click **OK** and commit the changes.

724 **Figure 2-19 Original Packet Network Address Translation Configuration**



725 2.4.2 Demilitarized Zone Configuration

- 726 1. Navigate to **Network > Interfaces**.
- 727 2. Click the interface that has the DMZ connection.

- 728 3. Add a comment, set the Interface Type to **Layer3**, and assign it to the virtual router created ear-
729 lier.
- 730 4. Click **IPv4 > Add > New Address**. Assign it an IP block, and give it a meaningful name. Click **OK**.
- 731 5. Navigate to **Network > Zones**.
- 732 6. Click **Add**. Give it a meaningful name, such as Enterprise_DMZ.
- 733 7. Set the Type to **Layer3**, and assign it the new interface that was configured—in this case, ether-
734 net1/3.
- 735 8. Click **OK**.
- 736 9. Navigate to **Network > DNS Proxy**. Click **Add** under **Interface**, and add the newly created inter-
737 face. Click **OK**.
- 738 10. Commit the changes.
- 739 11. Navigate to **Network > Interfaces**, and the configured interfaces should be green.

740 2.4.3 Firewall Configuration

- 741 1. Navigate to **Policies > Security**.
- 742 2. Click **Add**.
- 743 3. Give the rule a meaningful name, such as Intranet Outbound.
- 744 4. Click **Source**. Click **Add** under source zone, and set the source zone to be the internal network.
- 745 5. Click **Destination**. Click **Add** under destination zone, and set the destination zone to be the WAN
746 zone.
- 747 6. Click **Service/URL Category**. Under **Service**, click **Add**, and add **service-dns**. Do the same for ser-
748 vice-http and service-https.
- 749 7. Click **OK**.
- 750 8. Click **Add**.
- 751 9. Click **Destination**. Add the IP address of the Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) server.
- 752 10. Click **Application**. Click **Add**.
- 753 11. Search for **smtp**. Select it.
- 754 12. Click **OK**.

- 755 13. Commit the changes.
- 756 14. Internal hosts should now be able to communicate on the internet.

757 2.4.4 Certificate Configuration

- 758 1. Navigate to **Device > Certificate Management > Certificate Profile**.
- 759 2. Click **Add**.
- 760 3. Give the profile a meaningful name, such as Enterprise_Certificate_Profile.
- 761 4. Select **Subject** under **Username Field**.
- 762 5. Select the radio button next to **Principal Name**.
- 763 6. Enter the domain under **User Domain**—in this case, enterprise.
- 764 7. Click **Add** under **CA Certificates**. Select the **internal root CA certificate**.
- 765 8. Click **Add** under **CA Certificates**. Select the **internal sub CA certificate**. (Note: The entire certifi-
766 cate chain must be included in the certificate profile.)
- 767 9. Click **OK**.
- 768 10. Commit the changes.

769 **Figure 2-20 Certificate Profile**

Name: Enterprise_Certificate_Profile
 Username Field: Subject (dropdown) | common-name
 User Domain: enterprise

CA Certificates	Name	Default OCSF URL	OCSF Verify Certificate
<input type="checkbox"/>	Internal Root		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Internal Sub		

Use CRL CRL Receive Timeout (sec) 5
 Use OCSP OCSF Receive Timeout (sec) 5
OCSP takes precedence over CRL Certificate Status Timeout (sec) 5

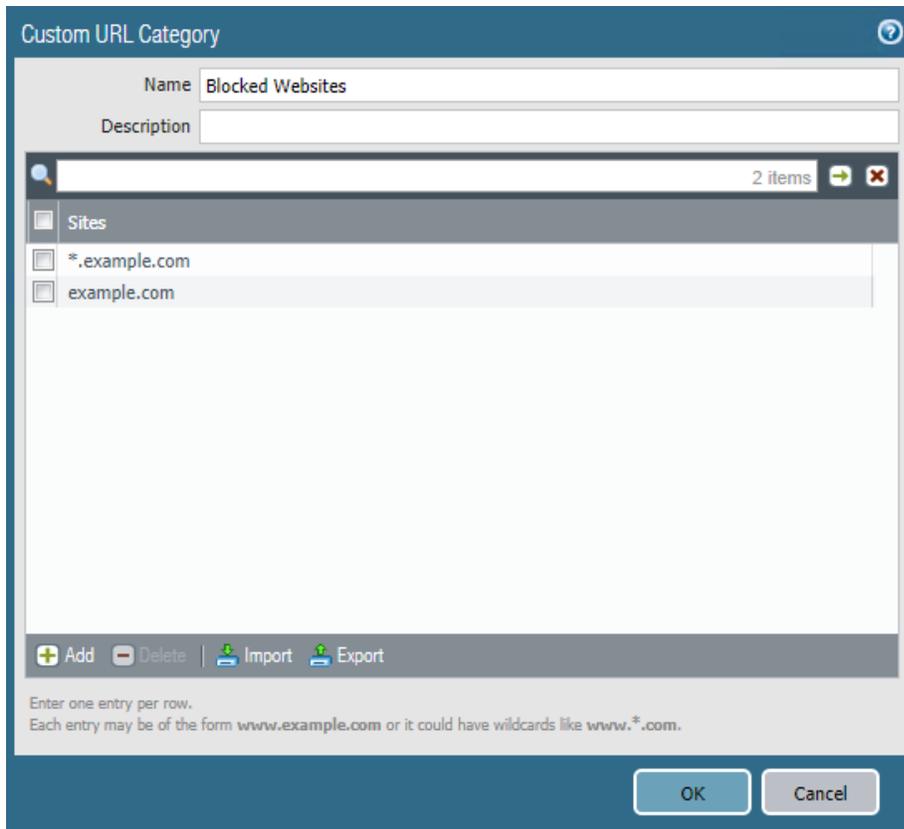
Block session if certificate status is unknown
 Block session if certificate status cannot be retrieved within timeout
 Block session if the certificate was not issued to the authenticating device
 Block sessions with expired certificates

OK Cancel

770 **2.4.5 Website Filtering Configuration**771 **2.4.5.1 Configure Basic Website Blocking**

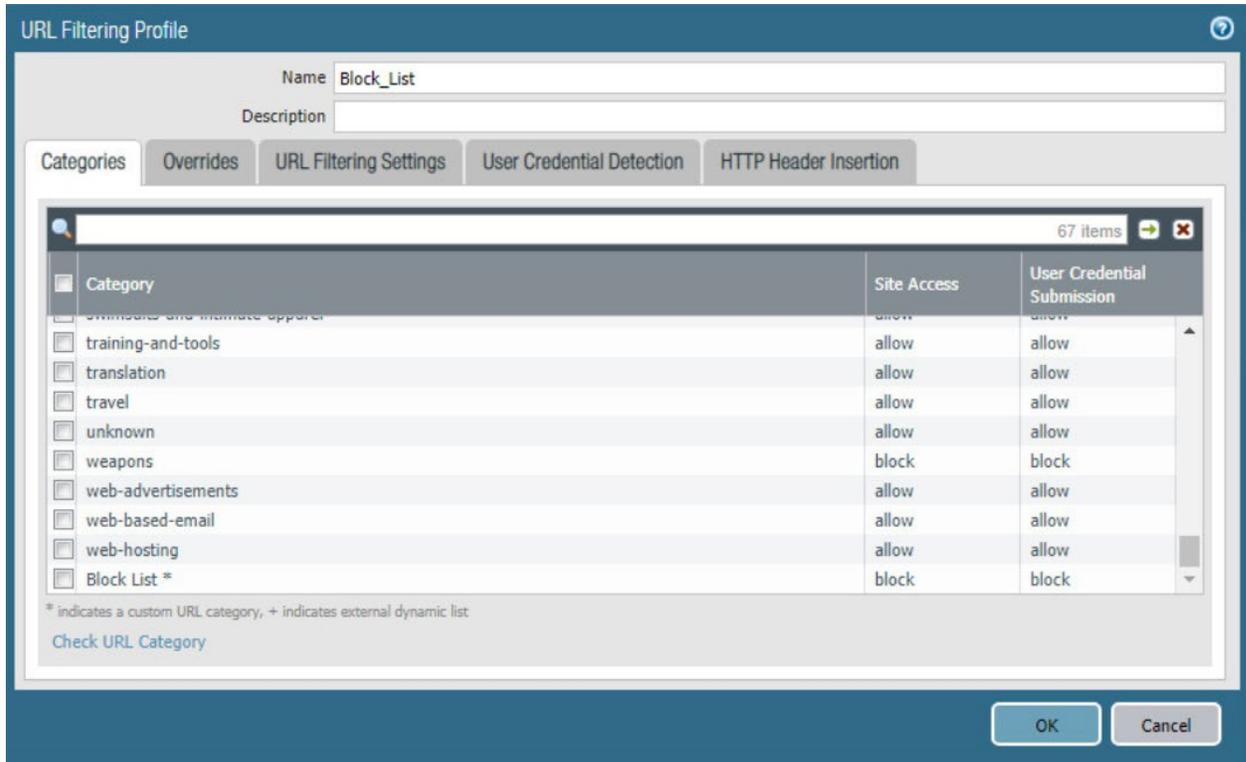
- 772 1. Navigate to **Objects > URL Category**.
- 773 2. Click **Add**.
- 774 3. Enter a name for the URL Category. Click **Add** on the bottom.
- 775 4. Add websites that should be blocked. Use the form **.example.com* for all subdomains and *example.com* for the root domain.
- 776

777 Figure 2-21 Custom URL Category



- 778 5. Click **OK**.
- 779 6. Navigate to **Objects > URL Filtering**.
- 780 7. Click **Add**.
- 781 8. Give the filtering profile a name.
- 782 9. Scroll to the bottom of the categories table. The profile created in step 4 should be the last item
- 783 in the list, with an asterisk next to it. Click where it says **allow**, and change the value to **block**.
- 784 10. Configure any additional categories to allow, alert, continue, block, or override.

785 Figure 2-22 URL Filtering Profile



- 786 11. Click **OK**.
- 787 12. Navigate to **Policies > Security**.
- 788 13. Select a policy to which to apply the URL filtering.
- 789 14. Select **Actions**.
- 790 15. Next to **Profile Type**, select **Profiles**.
- 791 16. Next to **URL Filtering**, select the created URL filtering profile.

792 Figure 2-23 URL Filtering Security Policy

The screenshot shows the 'Security Policy Rule' configuration window with the 'Actions' tab selected. The 'Action' is set to 'Allow'. Under 'Profile Setting', 'URL Filtering' is set to 'Block_List'. Under 'Log Setting', 'Log Forwarding' is set to 'None'. Under 'Other Settings', 'Schedule' and 'QoS Marking' are set to 'None', and 'Disable Server Response Inspection' is unchecked. The window has 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom right.

793 17. Click **OK**.

794 18. Repeat steps 13–17 for any policies to which to apply the filtering profile.

795 19. Commit the changes.

796 *2.4.5.2 Configure SSL Website Blocking*

797 Note: This section is optional. Section [2.4.5.1](#) outlines how to configure basic URL filtering, which will
 798 serve a URL blocked page for unencrypted (http [hypertext transfer protocol]) connections, and it will
 799 send a transmission control protocol reset for encrypted (https [hypertext transfer protocol secure])
 800 connections, which will show a default browser error page. This section outlines how to configure the
 801 firewall so that it can serve the same error page for https connections as it does for http connections.
 802 This is purely for user experience and has no impact on blocking functionality.

803 1. Navigate to **Device > Certificates**.

804 2. Click **Generate** on the bottom of the page.

805 3. Give the root certificate a name, such as SSL Decryption Root; and a common name (CN) such as
 806 PA Root.

807 4. Check the box next to **Certificate Authority**.

808 **Figure 2-24 Generating the Root CA**

The screenshot shows the 'Generate Certificate' dialog box. The 'Certificate Type' is set to 'Local'. The 'Certificate Name' is 'SSL Decryption Root' and the 'Common Name' is 'PA Root'. The 'Signed By' dropdown is empty. The 'Certificate Authority' checkbox is checked. The 'OCSP Responder' dropdown is empty. The 'Cryptographic Settings' section is expanded, showing 'Algorithm' as RSA, 'Number of Bits' as 2048, 'Digest' as sha256, and 'Expiration (days)' as 365. The 'Certificate Attributes' section is empty. The 'Generate' and 'Cancel' buttons are at the bottom.

809 5. Click **Generate**.

810 6. Click **Generate** at the bottom of the page.

811 7. Give the certificate a name, such as SSL Decryption Intermediate.

812 8. Give the certificate a CN, such as PA Intermediate.

813 9. Next to **Signed By**, select the generated root CA. In this case, SSL Decryption Root was selected.

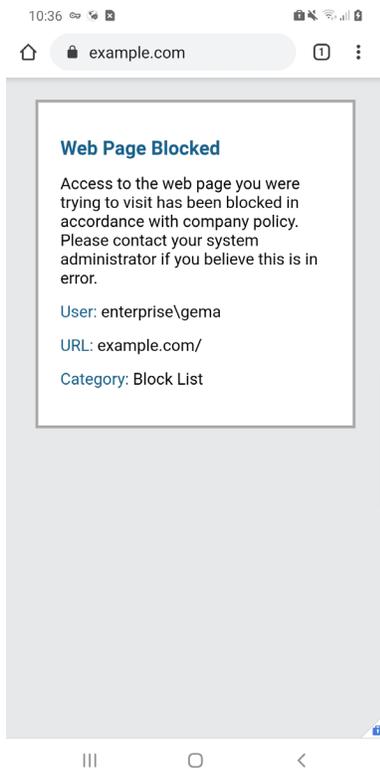
814 10. Check the box next to **Certificate Authority**.

815 11. Click **Generate**.

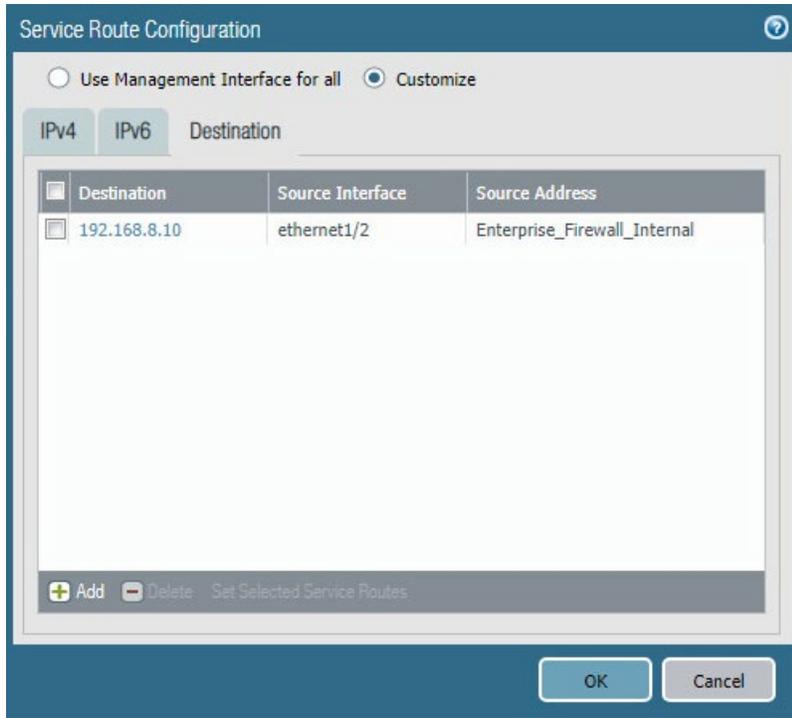
816 12. Click the newly created certificate.

817 13. Check the boxes next to **Forward Trust Certificate** and **Forward Untrust Certificate**.

- 818 14. Click **OK**.
- 819 15. Navigate to **Policies > Decryption**.
- 820 16. Click **Add**.
- 821 17. Give the policy a name and description.
- 822 18. Click **Source**.
- 823 19. Under **Source Zone**, click **Add**.
- 824 20. Select the source zone(s) that matches the security policy that uses URL filtering. In this imple-
825 mentation, the Intranet and SSL VPN zones were selected.
- 826 21. Click **Destination**.
- 827 22. Under **Destination Zone**, click **Add**.
- 828 23. Select the destination zone that matches the security policy that uses URL filtering. Most likely it
829 is the WAN zone.
- 830 24. Click **Service/URL Category**.
- 831 25. Under **URL Category**, click **Add**.
- 832 26. Select the created block list. This ensures that only sites matching the block list are decrypted.
- 833 27. Click **Options**.
- 834 28. Next to **Action**, select **Decrypt**.
- 835 29. Next to **Type**, select **SSL Forward Proxy**.
- 836 30. Next to **Decryption Profile**, select **None**.
- 837 31. Click **OK**.
- 838 32. Commit the changes.

839 **Figure 2-25 Blocked Website Notification**840 **2.4.6 User Authentication Configuration**

- 841 1. Navigate to **Device > Setup > Services > Service Route Configuration**.
- 842 2. Click **Destination**.
- 843 3. Click **Add**.
- 844 4. Enter the IP address of the internal LDAP server for Destination.
- 845 5. Select the **internal network adapter** for Source Interface.
- 846 6. Select the **firewall's internal IP address** for Source Address.
- 847 7. Click **OK** twice, and commit the changes.

848 **Figure 2-26 Service Route Configuration**

- 849 8. Navigate to **Device > Server Profiles > LDAP**.
- 850 9. Click **Add**.
- 851 10. Give the profile a meaningful name, such as Enterprise_LDAP_Server.
- 852 11. Click **Add** in the server list. Enter the name for the server and the IP.
- 853 12. Under **Server Settings**, set the Type to active-directory.
- 854 13. Enter the **Bind DN** and the password for the Bind DN.
- 855 **Note:** In this implementation, a new user, palo-auth, was created in Active Directory. This user does not
- 856 require any special permissions or groups beyond the standard Domain Users group.
- 857 14. Ensure that **Require SSL/TLS secured connection** is checked.
- 858 15. Click the **down arrow** next to **Base DN**. If the connection is successful, the Base DN (Distinguished Name) should display.
- 859
- 860 16. Click **OK**.

861 **Figure 2-27 LDAP Server Profile**

LDAP Server Profile

Profile Name: Enterprise_LDAP

Administrator Use Only

Name	LDAP Server	Port
LDAP Server	192.168.8.10	389

+ Add - Delete

Enter the IP address or FQDN of the LDAP server

Server Settings

Type: active-directory

Base DN: DC=enterprise,DC=mds,DC=local

Bind DN: palo-auth@enterprise.mds.local

Password:

Confirm Password:

Bind Timeout: 30

Search Timeout: 30

Retry Interval: 60

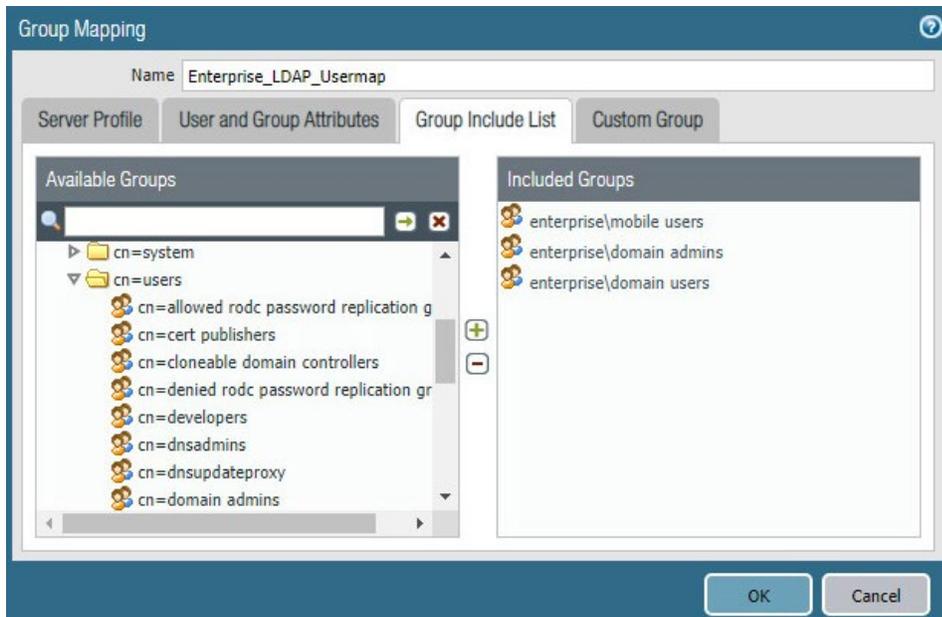
Require SSL/TLS secured connection

Verify Server Certificate for SSL sessions

OK Cancel

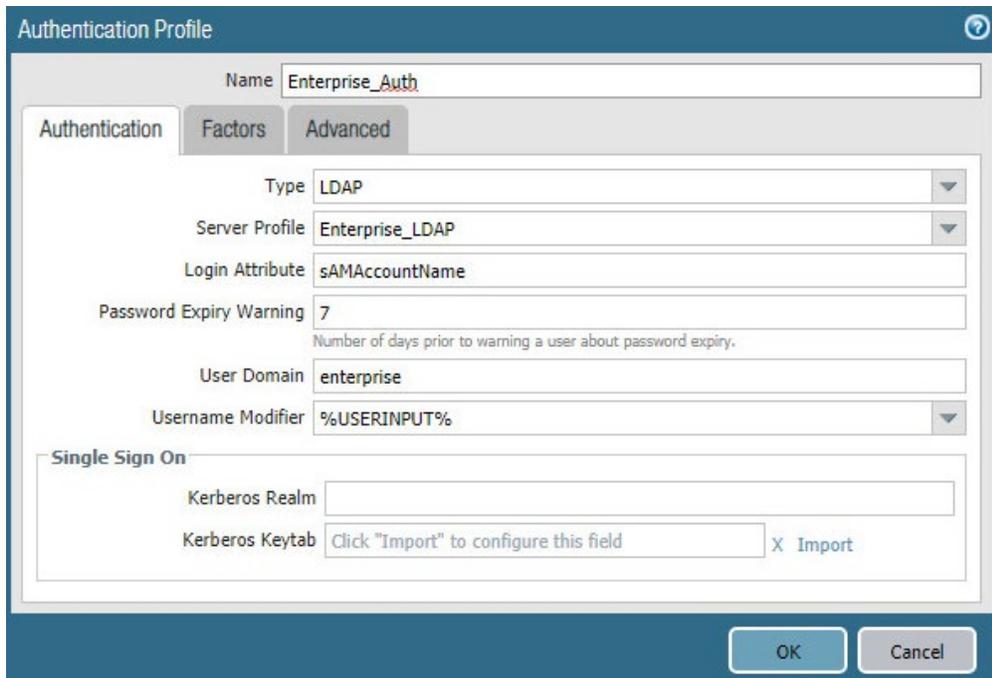
- 862 17. Navigate to **Device > User Identification > Group Mapping Settings**.
- 863 18. Click **Add**.
- 864 19. Give the mapping a name, such as Enterprise_LDAP_Usermap.
- 865 20. Select the **server profile**, and enter the **user domain**—in this case, Enterprise.
- 866 21. Click **Group Include List**.
- 867 22. Expand the arrow next to the **base DN** and then again next to **cn=users**.
- 868 23. For each group that should be allowed to connect to the VPN, click the proper **entry** and then
- 869 the **+ button**. In this example implementation, mobile users, domain users, and domain admins
- 870 were used.

871 Figure 2-28 LDAP Group Mapping



- 872 24. Click **OK**.
- 873 25. Navigate to **Device > Authentication Profile**.
- 874 26. Click **Add**.
- 875 27. Give the profile a meaningful name, such as **Enterprise_Auth**.
- 876 28. For the Type, select **LDAP**.
- 877 29. Select the newly created LDAP profile next to **Server Profile**.
- 878 30. Set the Login Attribute to be **sAMAccountName**.
- 879 31. Set the User Domain to be the **LDAP domain name**—in this case, **enterprise**.

880 **Figure 2-29 LDAP User Authentication Profile**



- 881 32. Click on **Advanced**.
- 882 33. Click **Add**. Select **enterprise\domain users**.
- 883 34. Repeat step 33 for **mobile users** and **domain admins**.
- 884 35. Click **OK**.
- 885 36. Commit the changes.

886 2.4.7 VPN Configuration

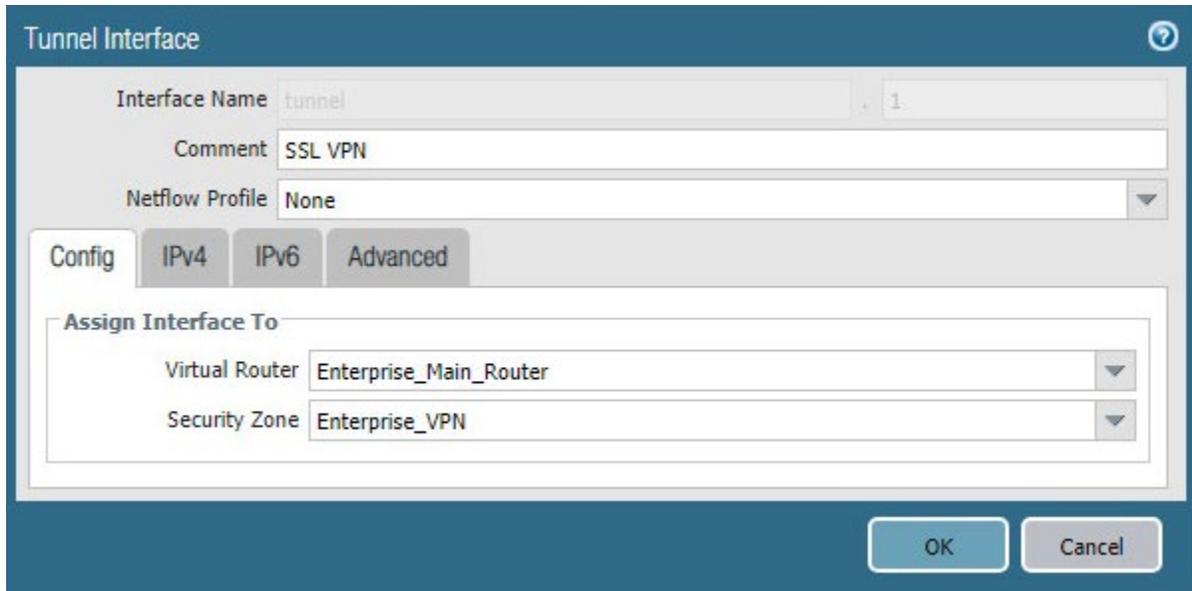
- 887 1. Navigate to **Network > Interfaces > Tunnel**.
- 888 2. Click **Add**.
- 889 3. Enter a tunnel number. Assign it to the main virtual router. Click **OK**.

890 **Figure 2-30 Configured Tunnel Interfaces**

Interface	Management Profile	IP Address	Virtual Router	Security Zone	Features	Comment
tunnel		none	none	none		
tunnel.1		none	Enterprise_Main_Ro...	Enterprise_VPN		SSL VPN

891

- 892 4. Click the **newly created tunnel**.
- 893 5. Click the drop-down next to **Security Zone**. Select **New Zone**.
- 894 6. Give it a name, and assign it to the newly created tunnel. Click **OK** twice.

895 **Figure 2-31 SSL VPN Tunnel Interface Configuration**

- 896 7. Commit the changes.
- 897 8. Navigate to **Policies > Authentication**.
- 898 9. Click **Add**.
- 899 10. Give the policy a **descriptive name**. For this example, the rule was named VPN_Auth.
- 900 11. Click **Source**.
- 901 12. Click **Add**, and add the VPN and WAN zones.
- 902 13. Click **Destination**.
- 903 14. Check the **Any** box above **Destination Zone**.
- 904 15. Click **Service/URL Category**.
- 905 16. Click **Add** under **Service**, and add **service-https**.
- 906 17. Click **Actions**.

907 18. Next to **Authentication Enforcement**, select **default-web-form**.

908 19. Click **OK**.

909 *2.4.7.1 Configure the GlobalProtect Gateway*

910 1. Navigate to **Network > GlobalProtect > Gateways**.

911 2. Click **Add**.

912 3. Give the gateway a meaningful name. For this implementation, the name Enterprise_VPN_Gate-
913 way was used.

914 4. Under **Interface**, select the **WAN Ethernet interface**.

915 5. Ensure that **IPv4 Only** is selected next to **IP Address Type**.

916 6. Select the **WAN IP of the firewall** next to **IPv4 Address**. Ensure that end clients can resolve it.

917 7. Click **Authentication**.

918 8. Select the created **SSL/TLS service profile** next to **SSL/TLS Service Profile**.

919 9. Click **Add** under **Client Authentication**.

920 10. Give the object a meaningful name, such as iOS Auth.

921 11. Next to **OS**, select **iOS**.

922 12. Next to **Authentication Profile**, select the **created Authentication Profile**.

923 13. Next to **Allow Authentication with User Credentials OR Client Certificate**, select **Yes**.

924 Figure 2-32 GlobalProtect iOS Authentication Profile

The screenshot shows a configuration window titled "Client Authentication". It contains the following fields and options:

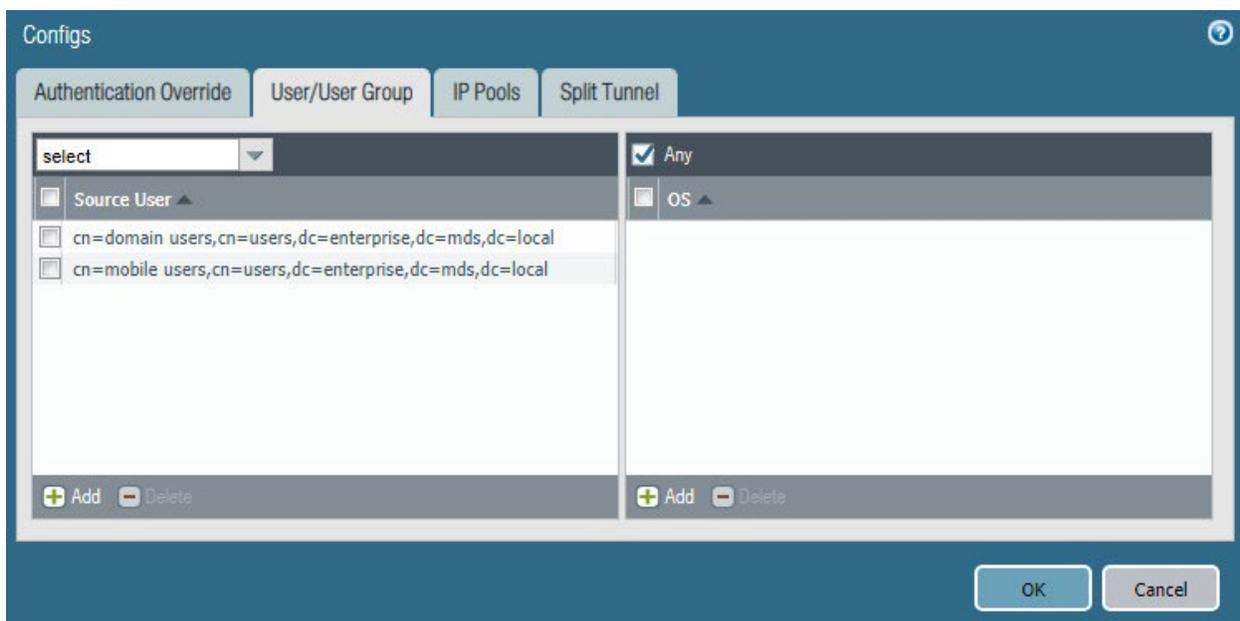
- Name:** iOS Auth
- OS:** iOS
- Authentication Profile:** Enterprise_Auth
- GlobalProtect App Login Screen:**
 - Username Label:** Username
 - Password Label:** Password
 - Authentication Message:** Enter login credentials
- Allow Authentication with User Credentials OR Client Certificate:** Yes (User Credentials OR Client Certificate Required)

At the bottom right, there are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons. A note at the bottom of the message field states: "Authentication message can be up to 256 characters."

- 925 14. Click **OK**.
- 926 15. Click **Add** under **Client Authentication**.
- 927 16. Give the object a meaningful name, such as Android Auth.
- 928 17. Next to **OS**, select **Android**.
- 929 18. Next to **Authentication Profile**, select the **created Authentication Profile**.
- 930 19. Next to **Allow Authentication with User Credentials OR Client Certificate**, select **No**.
- 931 20. Click **Agent**.
- 932 21. Check the box next to **Tunnel Mode**.
- 933 22. Select the **created tunnel interface** next to **Tunnel Interface**.
- 934 23. Uncheck **Enable IPSec**.
- 935 24. Click **Timeout Settings**.
- 936 25. Set **Disconnect On Idle** to an organization defined time.
- 937 26. Click **Client IP Pool**.
- 938 27. Click **Add**, and assign an IP subnet to the clients—in this case, **10.3.3.0/24**.
- 939 28. Click **Client Settings**.

- 940 29. Click **Add**.
- 941 30. Give the config a meaningful name, such as Enterprise_Remote_Access.
- 942 31. Click **User/User Group**.
- 943 32. Click **Add** under **Source User**.
- 944 33. Enter the **LDAP information** of the group allowed to use this rule. In this example, implementa-
945 tion, domain users, and mobile users were used.

946 **Figure 2-33 LDAP Authentication Group Configuration**



- 947 34. Click **Split Tunnel**.
- 948 35. Click **Add** under **Include**.
- 949 36. Enter **0.0.0.0/0** to enable full tunneling.
- 950 37. Click **OK**.
- 951 38. Click **Network Services**.
- 952 39. Set **Primary DNS** to be the internal domain controller/DNS server—in this case, **192.168.8.10**.
- 953 40. Click **OK**.
- 954 41. Navigate to **Network > Zones**.

- 955 42. Click the created **VPN zone**.
- 956 43. Check the box next to **Enable User Identification**.

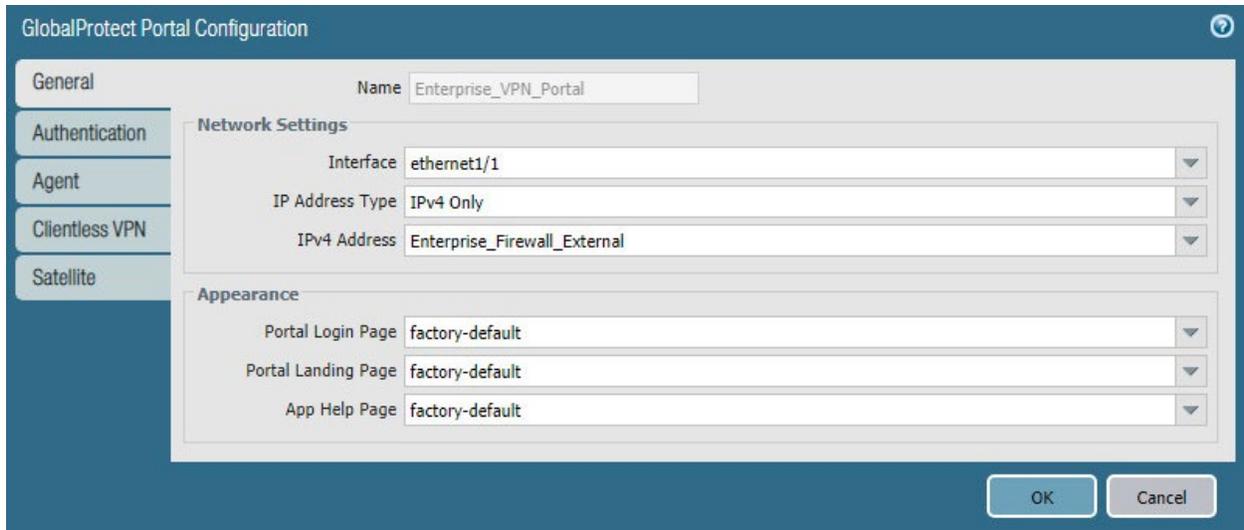
957 **Figure 2-34 VPN Zone Configuration**

The screenshot shows the 'Zone' configuration window. The 'Name' field is 'Enterprise_VPN', 'Log Setting' is 'None', and 'Type' is 'Layer3'. Under 'Interfaces', 'tunnel.1' is listed. In the 'Zone Protection' section, the profile is 'None' and 'Enable Packet Buffer Protection' is unchecked. The 'User Identification ACL' section is expanded, showing 'Enable User Identification' checked. It contains two lists: 'Include List' and 'Exclude List', both with instructions to 'Select an address or address group or type in your own address. Ex: 192.168.1.20 or 192.168.1.0/24'. Each list has 'Add' and 'Delete' buttons. At the bottom are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

- 958 44. Click **OK**.
- 959 45. Commit the changes.
- 960 *2.4.7.2 Configure the GlobalProtect Portal*
- 961 1. Navigate to **Network > GlobalProtect > Portals**.
- 962 2. Click **Add**.
- 963 3. Give the profile a meaningful name, such as Enterprise_VPN_Portal.
- 964 4. For Interface, assign it the firewall's **WAN interface**.

- 965 5. Set IP Address Type to **IPv4 Only**.
- 966 6. Set the IPv4 address to the firewall's **WAN address**.
- 967 7. Set all three appearance options to be **factory-default**.

968 **Figure 2-35 GlobalProtect Portal General Configuration**



- 969 8. Click **Authentication**.
- 970 9. Select the **created SSL/TLS service profile**.
- 971 10. Click **Add** under **Client Authentication**.
- 972 11. Give the profile a meaningful name, such as Enterprise_Auth.
- 973 12. Select the created **authentication profile** next to **Authentication Profile**.
- 974 13. Click **OK**.

975 Figure 2-36 GlobalProtect Portal Authentication Configuration

GlobalProtect Portal Configuration

General

Authentication

Agent

Clientless VPN

Satellite

Server Authentication

SSL/TLS Service Profile: GlobalProtect_Endpoint

Client Authentication

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	OS	Authentication Profile	Username Label	Password Label	Authentication Message
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Enterprise_Auth	Any	Enterprise_Auth	Username	Password	Enter login credentials

+ Add - Delete 🔄 Clone ↕ Move Up ↕ Move Down

Certificate Profile: Enterprise_Certificate_Profile

OK Cancel

- 976 14. Click **Agent**, and click **Add** under **Agent**.
- 977 15. Give the agent configuration a name.
- 978 16. Ensure that the **Client Certificate** is set to **None**, and **Save User Credentials** is set to **No**.
- 979 17. Check the box next to **External gateways-manual only**.

980 Figure 2-37 GlobalProtect Portal Agent Authentication Configuration

Configs

Authentication User/User Group Internal External App Data Collection

Name Agent Config

Client Certificate None

The selected client certificate including its private key will be installed on client machines.

Save User Credentials No

Authentication Override

Generate cookie for authentication override

Accept cookie for authentication override

Cookie Lifetime Hours 24

Certificate to Encrypt/Decrypt Cookie None

Components that Require Dynamic Passwords (Two-Factor Authentication)

Portal External gateways-manual only

Internal gateways-all External gateways-auto discovery

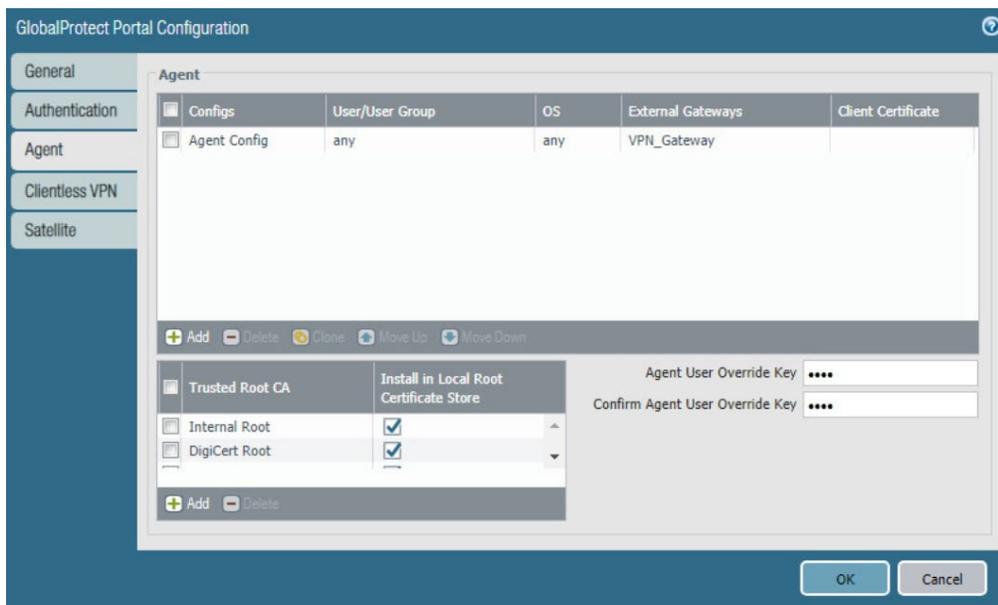
Select the options that will use dynamic passwords like one-time password (OTP) to authenticate users as opposed to using saved credentials. As a result, the user will always be prompted to enter new credentials for each selected option.

OK Cancel

- 981 18. Click **External**.
- 982 19. Click **Add** under **External Gateways**.
- 983 20. Give the gateway a name, and enter the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the VPN end
- 984 point.
- 985 21. Click **Add** under **Source Region**, and select **Any**.
- 986 22. Check the box next to **Manual**.
- 987 23. Click **OK**.
- 988 24. Click **App**.
- 989 25. Under **App Configurations > Connect Method**, select **On-demand**.
- 990 26. Next to **Welcome Page**, select **factory-default**.
- 991 27. Click **OK**.
- 992 28. Click **Add** under **Trusted Root CA**.

- 993 29. Select the **internal root certificate** used to generate device certificates.
- 994 30. Click **Add** again. Select the **root certificate** used to create the VPN end-point SSL certificate. For
995 this implementation, it is a DigiCert root certificate.
- 996 31. Click **Add** again. Select the **root certificate** used for SSL URL filtering, created in a previous sec-
997 tion.
- 998 32. Check the box next to **Install in Local Root Certificate Store** for all three certificates.

999 **Figure 2-38 GlobalProtect Portal Agent Configuration**



- 1000 33. Click **OK**.

1001 *2.4.7.3 Activate Captive Portal*

- 1002 1. Navigate to **Device > User Identification > Captive Portal Settings**.
- 1003 2. Click the **gear** icon on the top right of the Captive Portal box.
- 1004 3. Select the **created SSL/TLS service profile and authentication profile**.
- 1005 4. Click the radio button next to **Redirect**.
- 1006 5. Next to **Redirect Host**, enter the **IP address** of the firewall's WAN interface—in this case,
1007 **10.8.1.2**.

1008 Figure 2-39 Captive Portal Configuration

Captive Portal

Enable Captive Portal

Idle Timer (min)

Timer (min)

GlobalProtect Network Port for Inbound Authentication Prompts (UDP)

SSL/TLS Service Profile

Authentication Profile

Mode Transparent Redirect

Session Cookie

Enable

Timeout (min)

Roaming

Redirect Host

Certificate Authentication

Certificate Profile

NTLM Authentication

Attempts

Timeout (sec)

Reversion Time (sec)

OK Cancel

1009 6. Click **OK**.

1010 7. Commit the changes.

1011 *2.4.7.4 Activate the GlobalProtect Client*1012 1. Navigate to **Device > GlobalProtect Client**.

1013 2. Acknowledge pop up messages.

1014 3. Click **Check Now** at the bottom of the page.1015 4. Click **Download** next to the **first release** that comes up. In this implementation, version 5.0.2ate-
1016 was used.1017 5. Click **Activate** next to the **downloaded release**.

- 1018 6. Navigate to the FQDN of the VPN. You should see the Palo Alto Networks logo and the Glob-
1019 alProtect portal login prompt, potentially with a message indicating that a required certificate
1020 cannot be found. This is expected on desktops because there is nothing in place to seamlessly
1021 deploy client certificates.

1022 **Figure 2-40 GlobalProtect Portal**



1023 Note: If you intend to use the GlobalProtect agent with a self-signed certificate (e.g., internal PKI), be
1024 sure to download the SSL certificate from the VPN website and install it in the trusted root CA store.

1025 2.4.8 Enable Automatic Application and Threat Updates

- 1026 1. In the **PAN-OS portal**, navigate to **Device > Dynamic Updates**.
- 1027 2. Install the latest updates.
- 1028 a. At the bottom of the page, click **Check Now**.

1029 b. Under **Applications and Threats**, click **Download** next to the last item in the list with the
 1030 latest Release Date. This will take a few minutes.

1031 c. When the download completes, click **Close**.

1032 **Figure 2-41 Downloaded Threats and Applications**

Release Date	Downloaded	Currently Installed	Action	Documentation
2018/10/31 17:41:37 EDT	✓		Install Review Policies Review Apps	Release Notes

1033 d. Click **Install** on the first row.

1034 e. Click **Continue Installation**, leaving the displayed box unchecked. Installation will take a
 1035 few minutes.

1036 f. When the installation completes, click **Close**.

1037 3. Enable automatic threat updates. (Note: Automatic threat updates are performed in the back-
 1038 ground and do not require a reboot of the appliance.)

1039 a. At the top of the page, next to **Schedule**, click the hyperlink with the date and time, as
 1040 shown in Figure 2-42.

1041 **Figure 2-42 Schedule Time Hyperlink**

Version ▲	File Name	Features	Type
▼ Applications and Threats	Last checked: 2018/11/29 12:25:15 EST	Schedule:	Every Wednesday at 01:02 (Download only)

1042 b. Select the **desired recurrence**. For this implementation, weekly was used.

1043 c. Select the **desired day and time** for the update to occur. For this implementation, Satur-
 1044 day at 23:45 was used.

1045 d. Next to **Action**, select **download-and-install**.

1046 Figure 2-43 Application and Threats Update Schedule

Applications and Threats Update Schedule

Recurrence: Weekly

Day: saturday

Time: 23:45

Action: download-and-install

Disable new apps in content update

Threshold (hours): [1 - 336]
A content update must be at least this many hours old for the action to be taken.

Allow Extra Time to Review New App-IDs

Set the amount of time the firewall waits before installing content updates that contain new App-IDs. You can use this wait period to assess and adjust your security policy based on the new App-IDs.

New App-ID Threshold (hours): [1 - 336]

OK Cancel

1047 e. Click **OK**.

1048 f. Commit the changes.

1049

2.5 Kryptowire

1050 Kryptowire was used as an application vetting service via a custom active directory-integrated web
 1051 application.

1052

2.5.1 Kryptowire and MaaS360 Integration

- 1053 1. Contact IBM support to provision API credentials for Kryptowire.
- 1054 2. Contact Kryptowire support to enable the MaaS360 integration, including the MaaS360 API cre-
 1055 dentials.
- 1056 3. In the Kryptowire portal, click the **logged-in user's email address** in the upper right-hand corner
 1057 of the portal. Navigate to **Settings > Analysis**.
- 1058 4. Set the **Threat Score Threshold** to the desired amount. In this sample implementation, 75 was
 1059 used.

- 1060 5. Enter an **email address** where email alerts should be delivered.
- 1061 6. Click **Save Settings**. Kryptowire will now send an email to the email address configured in step 5
- 1062 when an analyzed application is at or above the configured alert threshold.

1063 **Appendix A** List of Acronyms

AD	Active Directory
API	Application Programming Interface
CA	Certificate Authority
CN	Common Name
DC	Domain Controller
DMZ	Demilitarized Zone
DN	Distinguished Name
DNS	Domain Name System
FQDN	Fully Qualified Domain Name
HKEY	Handle to Registry Key
HKLM	HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE
HTTP	Hypertext Transfer Protocol
HTTPS	Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure
IBM	International Business Machines
IIS	Internet Information Services
IP	Internet Protocol
IPSec	Internet Protocol Security
IPv4	Internet Protocol version 4
LDAP	Lightweight Directory Access Protocol
MDM	Mobile Device Management
MDSE	Mobile Device Security for Enterprise
NCCoE	National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence
NDES	Network Device Enrollment Service
NIST	National Institute of Standards and Technology

DRAFT

OU	Organizational Unit
PKI	Public Key Infrastructure
SCEP	Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol
SP	Special Publication
SSL	Secure Sockets Layer
TLS	Transport Layer Security
URL	Uniform Resource Locator
UUID	Universally Unique Identifier
VPN	Virtual Private Network
WAN	Wide Area Network

1064 **Appendix B** **Glossary**

Bring Your Own Device (BYOD) A non-organization-controlled telework client device. [\[2\]](#)

1065 **Appendix C References**

- 1066 [1] International Business Machines. "Cloud Extender architecture." [Online]. Available:
1067 https://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/en/SS8H2S/com.ibm.mc.doc/ce_source/referenc
1068 [es/ce_architecture.htm](https://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/en/SS8H2S/com.ibm.mc.doc/ce_source/referenc).
- 1069 [2] M. Souppaya and K. Scarfone, *Guide to Enterprise Telework, Remote Access, and Bring Your Own*
1070 *Device (BYOD) Security*, National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) Special Publication
1071 800-46 Revision 2, NIST, Gaithersburg, Md., July 2016. Available:
1072 <https://csrc.nist.gov/publications/detail/sp/800-46/rev-2/final>.